

For the primary learners

# VOCABULARY

## FUNDAMENTAL

刘毅 编著

进修·升学·就业

背单字要有顺序:

1. 最常用的
2. 次常用的
3. 特殊用途的

您的基础字汇够吗? 请马上  
翻开本书试做 5 回 Test, 如  
果答对 90 % 以下, 您立刻需  
要一本, 重新巩固基础!

三环出版社

琼新登字(03)号

基础词汇

刘毅 编著

社长:袁大川 责任编辑:王 柏

\*

三环出版社出版发行

(570105. 海口市滨海大道花园新村 20 号)

北京兴泉印刷厂印刷

1995 年 1 月 第二版 1995 年 1 月 第一次印刷

开本:850×1168 毫米 1/32 印张:10

印 数:1—20000

ISBN 7—80564—472—1/G·325

---

定价:8.80 元

41313.1

176-5

(2)

412655

compliment

## 序 言

学习英文最常遇到的一个问题,便是词汇不足。一个词汇不足的人,在英文听、写、说各方面的能力都会受到严重的限制。因此往往无法适当地与英美人士沟通意见;在参加考试时,更经常因为看不懂题目,而不知从何作答。

我们有鉴于此,特别为全国广大的英文读者编排了一系列的词汇丛书。从最基本的 Vocabulary Fundamental, 到足以应付留学考试之需的 Vocabulary 22000, 循序渐近, 为您扎实地打好词汇基础。无论您目前在校求学或已步入社会, 都会发现本系列书籍即是您苦寻已久, 增强英文实力的最佳利器。学校老师更可应用本系列书籍为辅助教材, 以补平日上课内容之不足。

一般均认为背单词是件吃力, 又费时或收不彰的苦差事, 因而总是望之却步。本系列书籍的问世恰可协助以上观念。以下列出词汇系列丛书的各项特点:

1. 以“课”为单元, 容易安排学习进度, 也避免了背词典式学习方法的冗长与杂乱无章。
2. 每个单词均附有详细的国际音标、词性说明及中文解释。
3. 适当列出各单词的衍生词、同义词及反义词, 以达举一反三, 事半功倍之效。
4. 以例句说明单词的用法, 各例句并附有中译, 以便参考。
5. 每一部分后均有习题, 以加深对所学单词的印象; 每一课后面更附有成果测验, 以评量对所学单词的了解程度, 并增进活用单词的能力。

词汇的增加绝非一蹴可及的, 但是若能采用系统的方法, 依旧可缩短增加词汇所需的时间。因此, 本系列丛书的读者, 只要按部就班, 循序渐近, 必可在

最短的期间内,获得最大的成效。并请切记随时要活用所学的单词,唯有如此,这些词汇才会确确实实地成为你自己的。

## Vocabulary Fundamental

1. 本书所列单词共计一千三百个,加上各词的衍生词、同义词及反义词,则实际收录约三千词。均为平日最常用,最容易接触到的单词。

2. 详细列出各词的国际音标、词性说明及中文解释,省却查词典的麻烦。中文解释是以该词最常用的意义为主,一词若有一种以上的常用解释或词性,则亦一并列出。单词后面附有例句,以说明该词的用法;例句并有中文翻译,以便对照参考。

3. 每一课分为五个部分,以便于分段记忆。在课前有预备测验,每一部分之后有习题,课后并有成果测验;可借着重复测验来加深对单词的印象,并学习如何活用单词。

4. 本书共分为 24 课,建议进度为一天一课,如此便可在一个月內增加 3000 个词汇。

编者 谨识



## 目 录

LESSON 1 .....	1
LESSON 2 .....	12
LESSON 3 .....	24
LESSON 4 .....	36
LESSON 5 .....	48
LESSON 6 .....	59
LESSON 7 .....	71
LESSON 8 .....	82
LESSON 9 .....	94
LESSON 10 .....	106
LESSON 11 .....	117
LESSON 12 .....	128
LESSON 13 .....	140
LESSON 14 .....	151
LESSON 15 .....	163
LESSON 16 .....	175
LESSON 17 .....	187
LESSON 18 .....	198
LESSON 19 .....	210
LESSON 20 .....	222
LESSON 21 .....	234
LESSON 22 .....	245
LESSON 23 .....	257
LESSON 24 .....	269
单词索引 .....	280

◎本书附有高品质录音带四卷,由美籍电台播音员录音,配合学习,效果最佳。

---

## LESSON 1

## 预备测验

◎ 选出最适当的答案:

1. When water A, it is full of *bubbles*.  
(A) boils (B) freezes
2. Many people *resort* to the beaches in B weather.  
(A) cold (B) hot
3. Let's all *cooperate* to get the work done A.  
(A) quickly (B) slowly
4. He was B because his name was *omitted* from the list.  
(A) invited (B) not invited
5. They put the *blame* for the B on the driver of the car.  
(A) success (B) accident

△ 解答 △

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**abroad** [ə'brɔ:d]

adv. 在国外地

同 overseas

He lived **abroad** for many years; he knows several foreign languages.

他在国外住了许多年, 知道几种外国语言。

**affect** [ə'fekt]

v. 影响

The small amount of rain last year **affected** the growth of crops.

去年雨量少, 影响谷物的生长。

**attend** [ə'tend]

v. 上(学); 参加

n. attendance

All children over seven must **attend** school.

七岁以上的小孩都得上学。

<b>blame</b> [bleim] n. 责难 同 compliment	I have done my best; neither praise nor <b>blame</b> can affect me now.	我已尽最大的努力, 赞扬或责难现在都影响不了我。
<b>bubble</b> ['bʌbl] n. 气泡	Children like to make <b>bubble</b> with soap and water.	孩子们喜欢用肥皂水做泡泡。
✓ <b>cemetery</b> ['semitri] n. 墓地 同 graveyard	There are many tombs in the <b>cemetery</b> .	墓地里有许多墓碑。
✓ <b>commendation</b> n. 赞扬 [kəmen'deiʃən] 同 praise 同 blame	He was given a <b>commendation</b> for bravery after he saved the little children from the fire.	他从火灾中救出孩子们后, 因为他的勇气可嘉而受到赞扬。
<b>conflict</b> ['kɒnflikt] n. 冲突; 争斗 同 fight 同 reconciliation	Some people think that there is a great deal of <b>conflict</b> between religion and science.	有些人认为宗教与科学间有很大的冲突。
<b>cooperate</b> v. 合作 [kəu'ɒpəreɪt] n. cooperation adj. cooperative	The children <b>cooperated</b> with their teachers in their class-room clean.	孩子们与老师合作保持教室清洁。
<b>curious</b> ['kjʊəriəs] adj. 好奇的 同 inquisitive	I am <b>curious</b> to know what my teacher said to my mother.	我很好奇想知道老师跟我母亲说些什么。

**Exercise 1.1:** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内;

- The news of his mother's death affected him deeply.  
*affected*
- Cemetery is a place for burying the dead.  
*cemetery*
- he is planning to go abroad next year for his study.  
*abroad*
- He doesn't attend church very often.  
*attend*
- If a child is curious he is always asking question.  
*curious*

【解答】 1. affected 2. Cemetery 3. abroad 4. attend 5. curious

《第二部分》

<b>delicious</b> <i>adj.</i> 美味的 [di'lɪʃəs] 同 sweet-tasting	We had some <b>delicious</b> cakes after dinner.	我们在晚饭后吃了一些美味的蛋糕。
<b>direct</b> [di'rekt] <i>v.</i> 监督; 指导 <i>adj.</i> 直接的 同 conduct, command 反 indirect	There was nobody to <b>direct</b> the workman. Which is the most <b>direct</b> way to London?	没有人监督工人。 去伦敦最直接的路是哪一条?
<b>draw</b> [drɔ:] <i>v.</i> 拉 同 drag, haul	<b>Draw</b> your chair nearer to the table.	把你的椅子往桌子拉近一点。
<b>empire</b> ['empaɪə] <i>n.</i> 帝国 同 realm	The United States was once a part of the British <b>Empire</b> .	美国一度曾是大英帝国一部分。
<b>event</b> [ɪ'vent] <i>n.</i> 事件 同 accident, happening	The discovery of America was a great <b>event</b> .	发现美洲是一件大事。
<b>failure</b> ['feɪljə] <i>n.</i> 失败 反 success	Success came after many <b>failure</b> .	成功在多次的失败之后到来。
<b>file</b> [faɪl] <i>n.</i> 文卷档 <i>v.</i> 归档	Please put these letters in the main <b>file</b> . The secretary <b>filed</b> the cards in order.	请将这些文件放入文卷总档中。 秘书将卡片依序归档。
✓ <b>frank</b> [fræŋk] <u><i>adj.</i> 坦白的</u> 同 candid, honest 反 deceitful, dishonest	He was <b>frank</b> to admit that he hadn't studied the lesson.	他坦白承认没有念那一课。

✓ **generate** ['dʒenəreɪt] We know that heating water 我们知道将水加热  
v. 产生 can **generate** steam. 可以产生蒸气。  
同 produce, make

✓ **halt** [hɔ:lɪt] The soldiers **halted** for a 士兵们停止前进。  
v. 停止前进 rest. 以休息片刻。

**Exercise 1.2:** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Her graduation from college was a(n) event. I did not want to miss.
2. What delicious food you have cooked!
3. The picnic was a failure because it rained.
4. If you want my frank opinion, I don't think the plan will succeed.
5. The company halted operations during the strike.

**【解答】** 1. event 2. delicious 3. failure 4. frank 5. halted

### 《第三部份》

✓ **horn** [hɔ:n] A goat has two **horns** on its 山羊的头上有两只  
n. 角 head. 角。

**individual** A teacher can't give **indivi-** 如果班上的人数众  
[ˌɪndɪˈvɪdʒuəl] **dual** attention if his class is 多,老师就不能个  
adj. 个别的 large. 别地注意到每一个  
学生。

n. 个人 The rights of the **individual** 个人的权利比整个  
同 person are more important than the 社会的权利要重要  
的多的。

**interval** ['ɪntəvəl] There is a long **interval** be- 他隔了一段很长的  
n. (时间的)间隔 fore he replied. 时间才回答。

✓ **knot** [nɒt] The **knots** of your package 你包裹上的绳结必  
n. 绳结 must be tied tightly. 须扎紧。

<b>liberal</b> ['libərəl] adj. 1. 自由主义的 2. 通才的 同 professional	He is <i>liberal</i> in his view on government. They want their child to have a <i>liberal</i> education.	他对政体的看法是属于自由主义的。 他们要他们的孩子接受通才教育。
✓ <b>magnificent</b> adj. 华丽的 [mæg'nɪfɪsnt] 同 grand, splendid n. magnificence	The king was wearing a <i>magnificent</i> gold crown.	国王戴着华丽的金冠。
<b>mental</b> ['mentl] adj. 心理的 同 physical	Keeping <i>mental</i> health is very important in modern society.	在现代社会中,维护心理健康是非常重要的。
<b>momentary</b> adj. 暂时的 ['mouməntəri] 同 transient 反 everlasting	Her feeling of danger was only <i>momentary</i> ; it soon passed.	她的危险感只是暂时的,很快就消失了。
✓ <b>neutral</b> ['nju:trəl] adj. 中立的	He remained <i>neutral</i> in the argument between his two friends.	他在两个朋友的争辩中,保持中立。
<b>omit</b> [ou'mɪt] v. 遗漏,删除	He made many mistakes in spelling by <i>omitting</i> letters.	他因漏掉字母而犯了许多拼字上的错误。

**Exercise 1.3:** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. We did not think that you would come here, because your name was ~~omitted~~ from the list. *omitted*
2. The judge in a court must be neutral in a trial. *neutral*
3. Each individual leaf on the tree is different. *individual*
4. There is a(n) interval of a week between Christmas and New Year's day. *interval*
5. There are probably as many kinds of mental illness as there are kinds of physical illnesses. *mental*

【解答】 1. omitted 2. neutral 3. individual 4. interval 5. mental

《第四部分》

✓ <b>peacock</b> ['pi:kək] n. 孔雀	A <b>peacock</b> can fly only short distance.	孔雀只能飞很短的距离。
<b>pioneer</b> [ˌpaɪə'niə] n. 先驱者 回 forerunner	John Glenn was a <b>pioneer</b> in space travel.	约翰·葛伦是太空旅行的先驱者。
✓ <b>pray</b> [preɪ] v. 祈祷	I will <b>pray</b> to God for your safe return.	我会向上帝祈祷你的平安归来。
<b>pronounce</b> [prə'naʊns] v. 1. 读~的音 n. pronunciation 2. 宣告 n. pronouncement	The teacher <b>pronounced</b> each word slowly.  The doctor <b>pronounced</b> that the man was dead.	老师把每一个字音都读得很慢。  医生宣告那男人死了。
<b>race</b> [reis] n. 1. 种族 2. 比赛	There are mainly three kinds of <b>races</b> in the world: the white <b>race</b> , the black <b>race</b> , and the yellow <b>race</b> .  Please tell me which horse won the <b>race</b> .	世界上有三个主要的种族:白种人,黑种人和黄种人。  请告诉我哪一匹马赢得比赛。
<b>relative</b> ['relatɪv] n. 亲戚 adj. 相对的 回 absolute	He has many <b>relatives</b> in the United States. East is a <b>relative</b> term; for example, France is east of England but west of Italy.	他在美国有很多亲戚。 东方是个相对的名词,譬如说,法国在英国的东方,但却在意大利的西方。
<b>resort</b> [rɪ'zɔ:t] v. 1. 常去	When we were high school students, we <b>resorted</b> to the restaurant.	当我们是高中生时,常去那家餐馆。

2. 求助	He always <b>resorted</b> to asking his friends for money. <i>doing</i>	他总是向朋友求助金钱。
✓ <b>rub</b> [rʌb] v. 摩; 擦	He <b>rubbed</b> his hands together to warm up.	他摩擦双手以取暖。
<b>shadow</b> [ˈʃædɔʊ] n. 阴暗处 同 shade	He walked along in the <b>shadows</b> hoping no one would recognize him.	他沿着阴暗处走, 希望没有人会认出他。
<b>situation</b> [ˌsitʃuˈeɪʃən] n. 情势 同 condition, case	I'm in a difficult <b>situation</b> and I don't know what to do.	我处在一个困难的情势中, 而我也不知道该怎么办。

**Exercise 1.4:** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. People of many races settled in the United States.
2. My uncle is my nearest relative.
3. With the light behind him, his shadow could be seen on the wall.
4. The doctor is regarded as a(n) pioneer in operating human hearts.
5. There is nothing we can do now but pray to God for help.

**【解答】** 1. races 2. relative 3. shadow 4. pioneer 5. pray

### 《第五部份》

✓ <b>sore</b> [sɔː] adj. 疼痛的 同 aching, painful	His <b>sore</b> leg made walking difficult.	疼痛的腿使他步行困难。
<b>spread</b> [spred] v. 覆盖; 铺(桌面)	His sister <b>spread</b> a cloth on the table.	他的姐姐把一块桌布铺在桌上。
<b>stomach</b> [ˈstʌmək] n. 胃	It is unwise to swim on a full <b>stomach</b> .	饱腹时游泳是不明智的。



<b>suitcase</b> ['sju:tkeis] n. 手提箱	He took two <b>suitcases</b> with him on the trip.	他旅行时带着两个手提箱。
✓ <b>talent</b> ['tælənt] n. 天才	The girl has a <b>talent</b> for music.	那女孩有音乐的天才。
✓ <b>throne</b> [θroun] n. 王位	He was only 15 years old when he came to the <b>throne</b> .	他登基时只有十五岁。
✓ <b>transfer</b> ['trænsfə:] n. 调职	He has asked for a <b>transfer</b> to another job.	他已要求调职。
[træns'fə:] v. 移转	The football player is hoping to <b>transfer</b> to another team soon.	该足球队员希望不久能调到另一队。
<b>usage</b> ['ju:zɪdʒ] n. 使用	Machines soon wear out under rough <b>usage</b> .	机器使用不小心很快就会磨损。
<b>vowel</b> ['vaʊəl] n. 元音字母 ☐ consonant	The <b>vowels</b> in the English language are represented by a, e, i, o, u, and, sometimes, y.	英文中的元音字母以 a, e, i, o, u 为代表, 有时再加上 y。
<b>withdraw</b> [wið'drɔ:] v. 缩回; 撤销	He quickly <b>withdrew</b> his hand from the hot stove.	他迅速地把手从热火炉上缩回。

**Exercise 1.5:** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Vowels are more difficult to pronounce than consonants.
2. It is not wise to work on an empty stomach.
3. The general decided to ~~draw~~ withdraw the troops from the present position.
4. The boy showed a real talent for painting.
5. This farm has been ~~drawn~~ transferred from father to son for generations.

**【解答】** 1. Vowel 2. stomach 3. withdraw 4. talent 5. transferred

## - 成果测验

**Exercise 1.6:** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

- C 1. (A) compliment (B) commendation (C) approach (D) praise  
A 2. (A) attend (B) draw 拉 (C) haul 拖 (D) drag  
B 3. (A) candid (B) curious (C) frank (D) honest  
B 4. (A) interval (B) omit (C) break (D) pause  
B 5. (A) splendid (B) neutral (C) magnificent (D) grand  
A 6. (A) race (B) situation (C) condition (D) case  
C 7. (A) aching (B) painful (C) delicious (D) sore  
B 8. (A) conflict (B) event (C) struggle (D) fight  
A 9. (A) obey (B) command (C) conduct (D) direct  
D 10. (A) happening (B) event (C) incident (D) pioneer

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. D

**Exercise 1.7:** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- C 1. 影响  
 (A) conflict (B) cooperate (C) affect (D) attend  
B 2. 责备  
 (A) blame (B) responsibility (C) stomach (D) talent  
C 3. 美味的  
 (A) incurious (B) delicious (C) dull (D) candid  
D 4. 先驱者  
 (A) bubble (B) consonant (C) peacock (D) pioneer  
B 5. 亲戚

(A) neutral (B) relative (C) uncle (D) resort

【解答】 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B

**Exercise 1.8:** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:1 1. *compliment*

(A) conflict (B) blame (C) success (D) failure

2 2. *indifferent*

(A) delicious (B) dull (C) curious (D) magnificent

3 3. *deceitful*

(A) dull (B) grand (C) neutral (D) frank

4 4. *momentary*

(A) everlasting (B) transient (C) liberal (D) important

5 5. *withdraw*

(A) haul (B) draw (C) advance (D) cooperate

【解答】 1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. C

**Exercise 1.9:** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:1. Although he was a f                e at school, he became a successful man later. (失败者)2. He was so c                   s to know what was in the letter that he opened it, even though it was addressed to his sister. (好奇的)3. Will you be quite f             k with me about this matter? (坦白的)4. In their school they have an i                   l of ten minutes for recess. (间隔的时间)

5. The police watched the cafe to which the robber was known to

r < ʌ t. (常去)

【解答】 1. failure 2. curious 3. frank 4. interval 5. resort

Exercise 1. 10: 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- 3 1. Steam can *generate* electricity by turning an electric generator.  
(A) change (B) produce (C) stop (D) spread
- 2 2. He earned high *commendation* from the people for his bravery.  
(A) reward (B) pride (C) praise (D) consideration
- 3 3. The policeman *hailed* the speeding car to see if the driver was drunk.  
(A) stopped (B) found (C) chased (D) caught
- 4 4. I have a *sore* throat from cold.  
(A) strong (B) weak (C) clear (D) painful
- 5 5. I will show you the *magnificent* palace of the king.  
(A) grand (B) ancient (C) colorful (D) dull

【解答】 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. A

## LESSON 2

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

- The rider *cursed* his \_\_\_\_\_ horse.  
(A) great (B) bad
- An *absolute* ruler can do just as \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) people tell him (B) he pleases
- There is usually a *ceremony* when a new building is \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) opened (B) destroyed
- The \_\_\_\_\_ was sent to him by *freight*.  
(A) letter (B) box
- The *peak* of the roof is the \_\_\_\_\_ part of the house.  
(A) highest (B) lowest

## △ 解答 △

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A

## 《第一部分》

✓ <b>absolute</b> ['æbsəljʊ:t] adj. 绝对的	He is a man of <b>absolute</b> honesty.	他是个绝对诚实的人。
✓ <b>agency</b> ['eidʒənsi] n. 经销处	The Ford Company has <b>agencies</b> all over the country.	福特公司在全国都有经销处。
<b>attitude</b> ['ætɪtju:d] n. 态度	He took a sympathetic <b>attitude</b> toward my situation.	他对我的境遇抱同情的态度。
<b>blank</b> [blæŋk] adj. 空白的 同 empty	Please write your name in the <b>blank</b> space at the top of the page.	请把你的名字写在此页上头的空白处。

✓ <b>bulk</b> [bʌlk] n. 堆; 容量 同 volume	A vast <b>bulk</b> of coal is still stored in the basement.	地下室中仍储有大量的煤堆。
✓ <b>ceremony</b> [ˈseri,məni] n. 典礼	Their marriage <b>ceremony</b> was performed in the church.	他们的结婚典礼在教堂举行。
<b>commerce</b> [ˈkɒmə(:)s] n. 贸易 adj. commercial 同 trade	Our country has grown rich because of its <b>commerce</b> with other nations.	我国由于与别国间的贸易而致富。
<b>confuse</b> [kənˈfju:z] v. 混淆 n. confusion 同 embarrass, puzzle	Even their own mother sometimes <b>confused</b> the twins.	即使是双胞胎自己的母亲, 有时候也会搞混。
✓ <b>copper</b> [ˈkɒpə] n. 铜	<b>Copper</b> is easily shaped into thin sheet or fine wire.	铜易于塑成薄板或细丝。
✓ <b>curse</b> [kə:s] v. 诅咒	He <b>curse</b> d the poor waitress who had spilled soup on him.	他咒骂那个把汤倒在他身上的可怜女侍。

**Exercise 2.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He stood there in a threatening attitude
2. Copper is an excellent conductor of heat and electricity.
3. He cursed when a car almost hit him.
4. Long ago some ruler had absolute power.
5. If you try to learn too many things at the same time you may get confused

【解答】 1. attitude 2. Copper 3. curse 4. absolute 5. confused

## 《第二部分》

<b>delight</b> [di'laɪt] n. 娱乐; 愉快 回 pleasure	Moving picture give great <b>delight</b> to millions of people.	电影娱乐了数以百万的人们。
<b>disappear</b> [ˌdɪsə'piə] v. 消失	The little boy <b>disappeared</b> around the corner.	那小男孩在街角处消失。
✓ <b>drift</b> [drɪft] n. v. 漂流	The boat was taken out to sea by the <b>drift</b> of the tide.	小船被潮流冲到外海。
<b>employ</b> [ɪm'plɔɪ] v. 雇用	That big factory <b>employs</b> many workers.	那家大工厂雇用许多工人。
✓ <b>evidence</b> ['eɪdəns] n. 证据 adj. evident adv. evidently	When the police arrived, he had already destroyed all the <b>evidence</b> .	当警察到达时, 他已毁了所有的证据。
<b>faculty</b> ['fækəlti] n. 1. 能力 2. (大学等的) 教职员	John has the <b>faculty</b> to learn languages easily. That will be discussed in the next <b>faculty</b> meeting.	约翰有迅速学会语言的能力。 那将会在下一次的教职员会议上讨论。
<b>financial</b> [faɪ'nænsjəl] adj. 经济上的 n. finance	Before he decided to study abroad, he has to solve <b>financial</b> problems.	在他决定出国念书前, 必须先解决经济上的问题。
✓ <b>freight</b> [freɪt] n. 货物 回 cargo	This aircraft company deals with <b>freight</b> only; it has no travel service.	这家航空公司只经营货运, 而没有旅游服务。
✓ <b>generous</b> ['dʒenərəs] adj. 慷慨的 n. generosity	It was very <b>generous</b> of them to share their meal with their poor neighbors.	他们愿意让贫苦的邻人共享餐食, 甚为慷慨。
<b>handy</b> ['hændi] adj. 便利的 回 convenient	There were <b>handy</b> shelves near the kitchen sink.	厨房的水槽边有便利的架子。

**Exercise 2.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个词,填入空格内:

1. He was very ~~clever~~ <sup>generous</sup> in his treatment of the captives.
2. He has a great ~~fact~~ <sup>fault</sup> for arithmetic.
3. The city of London is a great <sup>financial</sup> center in Europe.
4. The steel manufacturing company ~~employed~~ <sup>employ</sup> most of the young man in town.
5. This ~~freight~~ <sup>freight</sup> must be carefully handled when loading.

【解答】 1. generous 2. faculty 3. financial 4. employs 5. freight

### 《第三部分》

**horrible** ['hɒrəbl]

adj. 可怕的

n. horror

I have never seen such a **horrible** car accident.

我从未见过如此可怕的车祸。

✓ **industrious**

[ɪn'dʌstriəs]

adj. 勤劳的

An **industrious** student usually has good grades.

勤奋的学生通常有好成绩。

✓ **intimate** ['ɪntɪmɪt]

adj. 亲密的

n. intimacy

adv. intimately

Although my brother knew many people, he had few **intimate** friends.

虽然我兄弟认识许多人,但亲密的朋友却很少。

**knowledge** ['nɒlɪdʒ]

n. 了解;学识

A baby has no **knowledge** of good and evil.

婴儿不了解善恶。

**liberty** ['lɪbəti]

n. 自由

They fought to defend their **liberty** against the invaders.

他们为保卫自由而抵抗侵略者。

✓ **majesty** ['mædʒɪsti]

n. 庄严

同 greatness,

dignity

They were inspired by the **majesty** of the snow covered mountains.

他们由积雪山脉的庄严气氛中获得启示。



<b>mention</b> ['menʃən] v. 提起	Do not <b>mention</b> the terrible accident before the little children.	在小孩面前, 不要提起那件可怕的意外。
✓ <b>monument</b> ['mɒnjumənt] n. 纪念物	The ruins of the castle is an ancient <b>monument</b> , which the government pays money to preserve.	城堡的废墟是古代的纪念物, 政府花钱以保存之。
<b>nickname</b> ['nikneim] n. 绰号	He got the <b>nickname</b> "Fatty" because he was very fat.	他非常胖, 因而得到一个“胖子”的绰号。
✓ <b>onion</b> ['ʌnjən] n. 洋葱	<b>Onion</b> has a very strong smell and taste.	洋葱的气味和味道很烈。

**Exercise 2.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He is a(n) industrious student and deserves good grades.
2. The majesty of the Niagara Falls attracts a number of visitors.
3. I heard many horrible stories from my grandfather when I was young.
4. She opened the cage and gave the bird its liberty.
5. He has a good knowledge of French history.

【解答】 1. industrious 2. majesty 3. horrible 4. liberty  
5. knowledge

#### 《第四部分》

✓ <b>peak</b> [pi:k] n. 山顶 同 summit 同 foot	The mountain <b>peak</b> is covered with snow all year round.	山顶终年覆盖着雪。
✓ <b>pit</b> [pit] n. 坑 同 hole	Water collected in the <b>pit</b> left when the old trees were uprooted.	老树被连根拔起后所留下的坑会积水。

✓ <b>preach</b> [pri:tʃ] v. 传教	Many people went to church to hear him <b>preach</b> .	许多人到教堂听他传教。
<b>proof</b> [pru:f] n. 证据 v. prove	We must wait for better <b>proof</b> before we believe.	在我们相信以前, 必须等待更有力的证据。
<b>rag</b> [ræg] n. 破布 adj. ragged	She wiped her boots with a <b>rag</b> .	她用破布擦她的皮靴。
✓ <b>release</b> [ri'li:s] v. 释放 ☐ hold	After he was <b>released</b> from prison, he came home directly.	他被释放出狱后, 立刻回家。
<b>responsibility</b> [ris'pɒnsə'biliti] n. 责任 adj. responsible	<u>Now that</u> you are 13, you should have more sense of <b>responsibility</b> .	既然你已十三岁, 就应有更多的责任感。
<b>rude</b> [ru:d] adj. 不礼貌的 同 impolite	It is <b>rude</b> to stare at people or to point with a finger.	瞪眼看人或用手指人, 都是不礼貌的。
✓ <b>scorn</b> [skɔ:n] n. 轻视 v. 不屑; 轻视	We feel <b>scorn</b> <u>for</u> a traitor.	我们轻视卖国贼。
<b>shallow</b> ['ʃæləu] adj. 浅的	The lake is too <b>shallow</b> for swimming.	那湖太浅无法游泳。

**Exercise 2.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Do you have any proof that you weren't there at 9 o'clock last night?
2. The nurse will be released from duty at seven o'clock.
3. Most pupils feel scorn for those who cheat in the exam.
4. He preaches that God will soon destroy the evil world.
5. Don't be so rude to your teacher.

【解答】 1. proof 2. released 3. scorn 4. preached 5. rude

## 《第五部分》

✓ <b>soul</b> [saʊl] n. 灵魂 同 spirit 同 body	They were praying for the <b>souls</b> of the dead.	他们正为死者的灵魂祈祷。
<b>sprinkle</b> ['sprɪŋkl] v. 撒; 洒	He <b>sprinkled</b> sand along the icy path.	他沿着结冰的路撒沙子。
✓ <b>stoop</b> [stu:p] v. 弯腰 同 bend	He <b>stooped</b> to pick up the paper.	他俯身捡纸。
✓ <b>sum</b> [sʌm] n. 1. 金额 2. 和; 总额	He paid the <b>sum</b> of \$10 for a new bag.  The <b>sum</b> of 2 and 3 is 5.	他以十元的价格买一个新袋子。  二和三之和为五。
<b>talkative</b> ['tɔ:kətɪv] adj. 多嘴的	No man likes <b>talkative</b> woman.	没有男人喜欢多嘴的女人。
<b>throughout</b> [θru(:)'aut] adv. 全部地 prep. 全; 遍及	The woodwork in the house was rotten <b>throughout</b> . His name is famous <b>throughout</b> the world.	这间屋内的木制品全部腐朽了。 全世界都知道他的名字。
<b>transport</b> [træns'pɔ:t] v. 运送 n. transportation	Wheat is <b>transported</b> from the farms to the mills.	小麦从农场运送至面粉加工厂。
✓ <b>utter</b> ['ʌtə] v. 说出 n. utterance  adj. 完全的 同 complete	He was gone before she could <b>utter</b> a word.  She is an <b>utter</b> stranger to me.	她还未开口说一个字, 他就走了。  对我来说, 她完全是一个陌生人。

**voyage** ['vɔɪdʒ]

n. 航行

同 navigation

The **voyage** from England to India used to take six months. 过去从英国航行印度, 要花六个月的时间。✓ **wither** ['wiðə]

v. 枯萎

同 fade

The grass **withered** in the sun. 草在阳光下枯萎了。**Exercise 2.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:1. Many people believe in the immortality of the soul.2. The flowers withered in the cold.3. She stooped her head to get into the car.4. We sprinkled ashes on the icy sidewalk this morning.5. The goods were transported by rail and ship.

【解答】 1. soul    2. wither(ed)    3. stooped    4. sprinkled  
5. transported

## 成果测验

**Exercise 2.6** 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词:\_\_\_ 1. a great *faculty* for music

(A) member

(B) ☒ capability

(C) audience

(D) ☒ knowledge\_\_\_ 2. clear *evidence*(A) ☒ proof

(B) knowledge

(C) situation

(D) agency

\_\_\_ 3. a bulk of *freight*

(A) weight

(B) surprise

(C) failure

(D) ☒ cargo\_\_\_ 4. a *handy* little box

(A) relative

(B) heavy

(C) ☒ convenient

(D) cheap

\_\_\_ 5. a *horrible* accident

(A) dangerous    (B) ~~ghastly~~    (C) ~~sore~~    (D) big

6. the *majesty* of mountains

(A) ~~grandeur~~    (B) faculty    (C) monument    (D) honor

7. the *peak* of a mountain

(A) foot    (B) ~~summit~~    (C) height    (D) horn

8. *rude* remarks

(A) loud    (B) ~~impolite~~    (C) direct    (D) candid

9. to *sprinkle* water on the road

(A) ~~scatter~~    (B) draw    (C) drink    (D) gather

10. large *sum* of money

(A) spending    (B) peak    (C) ~~amount~~    (D) resort

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. C

**Exercise 2.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

1. 撒

(A) pour    (B) halt    (C) scorn    (D) ~~sprinkle~~

2. 枯萎

(A) rub    (B) utter    (C) ~~wither~~    (D) resort

3. 贸易

(A) ~~commerce~~    (B) industry    (C) finance    (D) freight

4. 诅咒

(A) release    (B) ~~curse~~    (C) blame    (D) pray

5. 传教

(A) utter    (B) mention    (C) ~~preach~~    (D) affect

【解答】 1. D    2. C    3. A    4. B    5. C

**Exercise 2.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. *vanish*  
(A) disappear (B) spread (~~C~~) appear (D) attend
- \_\_\_ 2. *generous*  
(A) liberal (~~B~~) mean (C) special (D) common
- \_\_\_ 3. *industrious*  
(A) handy (B) diligent (~~C~~) lazy (D) agricultural
- \_\_\_ 4. *release*  
(~~A~~) hold (B) work (C) withdraw (D) draw
- \_\_\_ 5. *rude*  
(A) frank (B) low (C) peak (~~D~~) polite
- \_\_\_ 6. *scorn*  
(A) contempt (B) wet (C) cooperation (~~D~~) respect
- \_\_\_ 7. *shallow*  
(A) delightful (B) shade (~~C~~) deep (D) delicious
- \_\_\_ 8. *soul*  
(A) straight (~~B~~) body (C) haul (D) grand
- \_\_\_ 9. *absolute*  
(~~A~~) relative (B) present (C) intimate (~~D~~) diligent
- \_\_\_ 10. *delight*  
(A) pleasure (~~B~~) sorrow (~~C~~) horror (D) scorn

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. B

**Exercise 2.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. It is r u d e to say you don't like hot food, when she spend so long preparing it. (不礼貌的)
2. He seemed to s c o r n woman, and never married. (藐视)
3. He became very t a k a t i v e when he gets drunk. (多话的)
4. His a t t i t u d e toward school changed from dislike to great enthusiasm. (态度)
5. He is a member of the college f a c u l t y y. (教职员)

**【解答】** 1. rude 2. scorn 3. talkative 4. attitude 5. faculty

**Exercise 2.10** 选出最适合句意的一个单词:

1. We need a great \_\_\_\_\_ or coal for this coming winter.  
(A) empire (B) pit (C) bubble (D) ☒ bulk
2. To his great \_\_\_\_\_ he passed the examination easily.  
(A) ☒ delight (B) despair (C) faculty (D) convenience
3. There was not enough \_\_\_\_\_ to prove him guilty of crime.  
(A) faculty (B) ☒ evidence (C) conflict (D) police
4. Though he didn't have much money to give, he was very \_\_\_\_\_ with his money.  
(A) curious (B) magnificent (C) ☒ generous (D) neutral
5. They built a \_\_\_\_\_ in memory of Abraham Lincoln.  
(A) ☒ monument (B) cemetery (C) freight (D) majesty

**【解答】** 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A

**Exercise 2.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当词性,填入空格中:

1. *horrible*      The little girl has a horror of snakes and spiders.
2. *intimate*      The \_\_\_\_\_ with which the two friends talked showed how fond they were of each other.
3. *confuse*      If you write more clearly, you will prevent the \_\_\_\_\_ of your readers.
4. *utter*      His crazy \_\_\_\_\_ disappointed everyone around him.
5. *proof*      In order to \_\_\_\_\_ the servant's honesty, she left a bag containing money on the table.

**【解答】** 1. horror 2. intimate 3. confusion 4. utterance 5. prove

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。



## LESSON 3

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

- My feet were *damp* from walking home in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) sun (B) rain
- When he learned that he had \_\_\_\_\_ the test, he felt *relieved*.  
(A) passed (B) failed
- He could not resist the *attraction* of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ girl.  
(A) pretty (B) ugly
- The woman showed *mercy* to the hungry beggar and give him \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) no food (B) some food
- \_\_\_\_\_ are *tame* animals.  
(A) Cows and hens (B) Tigers and lions

△ 解答 △  
1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A

## 《第一部分》

- academic** [ˌækə'demik] The *academic* year begins 学年是从学校九月  
when school opens in 开学时开始。  
*adj.* 学校的  
☐ *scholastic* September.
- ahead** [ə'hed] Tom was a quick walker, so 汤姆走路很快, 所  
he soon got *ahead* of the 以不久他就走在别  
others. 人前面了。  
*adv.* 超过; 在前地
- attraction** [ə'trækʃən] He cannot resist the *attrac-* 在炎热的天气中,  
*n.* 诱惑 *tion* of the sea in hot wea- 他无法抵抗海的诱  
*v.* attract ther. 惑。

<b>blaze</b> [bleiz] n. 火焰 同 flame	I put some wood on the fire and it soon burst into a <b>blaze</b> .	我放一些木柴在火中,很快就发出烈焰。
<b>challenge</b> [ˈtʃælɪndʒ] v. 邀请比赛	I <b>challenged</b> him to a game of tennis.	我邀请他作网球比赛。
<b>commit</b> [kəˈmɪt] v. 1. 犯;作 2. 委托 n. commitment	A man who steals <b>commits</b> a crime.  He <b>committed</b> himself to the doctor's care.	偷窃的人犯罪。  他将自己委托给医生。
<b>congress</b> [ˈkɒŋɡres] n. 立法机关 同 parliament, assembly	In some countries, the <b>congress</b> is composed of a Senate and a House of Representatives.	有些国家的立法机关是由参议院和众议院组成。
<b>correction</b> [kəˈrekʃən] n. 改正 v. correct	Teachers usually make <b>corrections</b> in red ink.	老师通常用红墨水批改。
<b>damp</b> [dæmp] adj. 潮湿的 同 wet, moist	If you sleep between <b>damp</b> sheets, you will probably catch cold.	如果你睡在潮湿的被单里,可能会着凉。
<b>demand</b> [diˈmɑːnd] v. 需要	This sort of work <b>demands</b> great patience.	这种工作需要很大的耐心。

**Exercise 3.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Our school \_\_\_\_\_ the neighboring school's team to a game of football last week.
2. In the U. S. A., the \_\_\_\_\_ is the law-making body, consisting of the Senate and the House of Representatives.
3. If you fall into a river your clothes will be wet; if you walk in the rain for a short time they will be \_\_\_\_\_.
4. History and French are \_\_\_\_\_ subjects; typewriting and bookkeeping are commercial subjects.

5. Columbus was \_\_\_\_\_ of his time in his belief that the world was round.

【解答】 1. challenged 2. Congress 3. damp 4. academic 5. ahead

## 《第二部分》

<b>disappoint</b> [ˌdɪsəˈpɔɪnt] v. 使失望 n. disappointment	I was <b>disappointed</b> when I heard you couldn't come to the party.	当我听到你不能来参加宴会时,感到很失望。
<b>drown</b> [draʊn] v. 淹死	The fisherman almost got <b>drowned</b> when his boat was overturned.	当渔夫的船翻覆时,他几乎淹死。
<b>encourage</b> [ɪnˈkʌrɪdʒ] v. 鼓励 同 inspire	The teacher's praise <b>encouraged</b> the students to study hard.	老师的称赞鼓励学生们更加用功。
<b>evident</b> [ˈeɪdɪənt] adj. 明显的 n. evidence	It is now <b>evident</b> that, if I don't study hard, I will fail the course.	现在情形很明显,如果我不努力用功,我这一科就会不及格。
<b>fable</b> [ˈfeɪbl] n. 寓言	He read stories to the children from an old book of <b>fables</b> .	他从一本旧的寓言书里念故事给孩子们听。
<b>firm</b> [fɜ:m] adj. 坚硬的	We build houses on <b>firm</b> ground.	我们在坚硬的土地上盖房子。
<b>frequent</b> [ˈfri:kwənt] adj. 常有的 n. frequency	Sudden rainstorms are <b>frequent</b> on this coast.	这里海岸常有突然的暴风雨。
<b>genius</b> [ˈdʒi:njəs] n. 天才	Important discoveries and inventions are usually made by man of <b>genius</b> .	重要的发现和发明通常是有天才的人所为。

<b>harbor</b> ['hɑ:bə] n. 港	The ship is in the <b>harbor</b> of New York.	那船停在纽约港中。
<b>howl</b> [haʊl] n. 咆哮 回 yell, shout	The dog were <b>howling</b> at the stranger.	狗正向那陌生人咆哮着。

**Exercise 3.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He jumped into the river and saved the \_ \_ \_ man.
2. It is not a(n) \_ \_ \_ but a real story.
3. The cheers of their school-mates \_ \_ \_ the players to win the game for the school.
4. He was very \_ \_ \_ when I said he had to stay at home on Sunday.
5. The little girl's joy was \_ \_ \_ when she saw the present her father bought for her.

**【解答】** 1. drowning 2. fable 3. encouraged 4. disappointed  
5. evident

### 《第三部分》

<b>infamous</b> ['ɪnfəməs] adj. 声名狼藉的 回 notorious	Nobody likes him because he is an <b>infamous</b> liar.	每个人都不喜欢他,因为他是个声名狼藉的骗子。
<b>introduce</b> [,ɪntrə'dju:s] v. 介绍 n. introduction adj. introductory	The chairman <b>introduced</b> the speaker to the audience.	主席将演讲人介绍给听众。
<b>labor</b> ['leɪbə] n. 劳动 adj. laborious	The majority of the men earn their living by manual <b>labor</b> .	大多数的人靠双手劳动来谋生。

<b>lid</b> [lɪd] n. 盖 □ cover	Do not open the <i>lid</i> of the stove.	不要打开炉盖。
<b>majority</b> [mə'dʒɔ:ɪti] n. 大多数	The <i>majority</i> people prefer peace to war.	大多数的人喜爱和平, 不喜欢战争。
<b>mercy</b> ['mɜ:si] n. 宽恕 adj. merciful	He showed <i>mercy</i> to his enemies and let them live.	他宽恕了敌人, 让他们活着。
<b>moral</b> ['mɔ:əl] adj. 道义上的 n. morality	The teacher felt a <i>moral</i> responsibility for the student's crime.	老师对那学生所犯的错, 感到有道义上的责任。
<b>nod</b> [nɒd] n. 点头	The president <i>noded</i> and everyone sat down around the table.	董事长点了头, 每个人就围着桌子坐下。
<b>operate</b> [ˈɒpəreɪt] v. 转动 n. operation	The machine <i>operates</i> day and night.	机器日夜不停地转动。
<b>painful</b> ['peɪnful] adj. 疼痛的	He had a <i>painful</i> cut on his thumb.	他大拇指上有疼痛的伤口。

**Exercise 3.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ a sewing machine.
2. Tobacco was \_\_\_\_\_ into Europe from America.
3. To win election, a candidate must receive the \_\_\_\_\_ of the votes.
4. Land, \_\_\_\_\_, and capital are the three principal factors of production.
5. They showed little \_\_\_\_\_ to their enemies.

**【解答】** 1. operate 2. introduced 3. majority 4. labor 5. mercy.

## 《第四部分》

<b>pearl</b> [pɔ:l] n. 珍珠	The natural <b>pearl</b> is much more expensive than a cultured one.	天然的珍珠比养珠要昂贵得多。
<b>pitch</b> [pitʃ] v. 1. 抛; 投 2. 搭; 扎	Every child likes to <b>pitch</b> stones into a lake. We <b>pitched</b> our tent under the tree.	每个孩子都喜欢将石子抛入湖中。 我们在树下扎营。
<b>precious</b> ['preʃəs] adj. 宝贵的 同 valuable	Time is <b>precious</b> ; do not waste it on worthless deeds.	时间是宝贵的, 不要把它浪费在无价值的行动上。
<b>property</b> ['prɒpəti] n. 所有物; 财产 同 possessions	The police found some stolen <b>property</b> hidden in the thief's house.	警察在小偷的屋里发现一些被藏起来的失窃物。
<b>rage</b> [reɪdʒ] n. 愤怒 同 angry, fury	He flew into a <b>rage</b> when he found they had gone without him.	当他了解他们已不告而别时, 大为愤怒。
<b>relieve</b> [ri'li:v] v. 1. 减轻 n. relief 2. 感到放心	The medicine will soon <b>relieve</b> your headache. We were <b>relieved</b> to hear that you have arrive safely.	那药很快就会减轻你的头疼。 听到你已安全抵达, 我们都放心了。
<b>restless</b> ['restlis] adj. 不安的	He couldn't sit still; he was very <b>restless</b> .	他无法静坐着; 他很不安。
<b>rug</b> [rʌg] n. 地毯 同 carpet	There were several small <b>rugs</b> in the living room.	客厅里有几块小地毯。
<b>scout</b> [skaut] n. 侦察兵	The <b>scouts</b> went out during the night.	侦察兵夜间出来。

**shame** [ʃeɪm]

n. 羞耻

同 humiliation

反 boldness

She felt **shame** at having  
been so thoughtless.她对她曾经如此的  
疏忽,感到羞耻。**Exercise 3.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. In his rage at being scolded, he broke the teacher's vase.
2. The child blushed with \_\_\_\_\_ when he was caught stealing candy.
3. She was presented a beautiful necklace of \_\_\_\_\_ on her birthday.
4. The city is growing and \_\_\_\_\_ in the center is becoming more valuable.
5. The sick child passed a \_\_\_\_\_ night.

【解答】 1. rage / 2. shame 3. pearl 4. property 5. restless

## 《第五部分》

**sketch** [sketʃ]

n. 草案;略图

He gave me a **sketch** of his  
plans for the expedition.他给我一份他探险  
计划的草案。**sound** [saund]

adj. 健全的

He has a **sound** body; he is in  
healthy condition.他有健康的身体;  
他的健康情况良好。

n. 声音

They heard the **sound** of the  
train whistle.他们听到火车的鸣  
笛声。**spy** [spai]

n. 侦探;间谍

The **spy** reported the deve-  
lopment of a new weapon.侦探报告新武器的  
进展。

v. 侦察

His job was to **spy** on the  
enemy.他的工作是侦察敌  
军。**storage** ['stɔ:ridʒ]

n. 贮藏库

A cold **storage** is used to  
keep eggs and meat from  
spoilage.冷藏库是用来防止  
蛋和肉腐坏。

<b>summon</b> ['sʌmən] v. 传唤	They were <i>summoned</i> to the bed-side of their dying father.	他们被传唤到垂死的父亲的床边。
<b>tame</b> [teɪm] adj. 温驯的  v. 驯服	It is not difficult to ride a <i>tame</i> horse.  He <i>tamed</i> the lions for the circus.	骑一匹温驯的马并不难。  他为马戏团驯服狮子。
<b>thrust</b> [θrʌst] v. 插入	Jack <i>thrust</i> his hands into his pockets.	杰克把两手插进衣袋里。
<b>trap</b> [træp] n. 陷阱 同 snare	The police set a <i>trap</i> to catch the escaped prisoner.	警察设下陷阱以逮捕逃犯。
<b>vaccinate</b> ['væksineɪt] v. 接种疫苗	He was <i>vaccinated</i> against several diseases at one time.	他接种一次疫苗可抵抗好几种疾病。
<b>wage</b> [weɪdʒ] n. 薪资	His <i>wage</i> is \$ 30 a week.	他的工资一星期三十元。
<b>witness</b> [wɪtnɪs] v. 目睹  n. 证人	The boy <i>witnessed</i> the accident.  He made the remark in the presence of several <i>witnesses</i> .	那男孩子目睹了意外事故。  他在几个证人面前说话。

**Exercise 3.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. They were asking for a \_\_\_\_\_ increase of \$ 5 a week.
2. She made a \_\_\_\_\_ of the landscape in pencil before painting it.
3. His furniture is in \_\_\_\_\_ while he finds a new house.
4. The birds are so \_\_\_\_\_ that they eat from our hands.
5. I was \_\_\_\_\_ against typhus last month.



**【解答】** 1 wage 2. sketch 3. storage 4. tame 5. vaccinated

### 成果测验

**Exercise 3.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词：

- \_\_\_1. (A) wet (B) curious (C) moist (D) damp
- \_\_\_2. (A) sum (B) wage (C) salary (D) pay
- \_\_\_3. (A) require (B) demand (C) claim (D) desire
- \_\_\_4. (A) sketch (B) bulk (C) outline (D) plan
- \_\_\_5. (A) dishonor (B) shame (C) shade (D) humiliation
- \_\_\_6. (A) firm (B) hard (C) solid (D) damp
- \_\_\_7. (A) notorious (B) infamous (C) hottible (D) disreputable
- \_\_\_8. (A) rage (B) fury (C) anger (D) scorn
- \_\_\_9. (A) common (B) unusual (C) numerous (D) frequent
- \_\_\_10. (A) evident (B) absolute (C) clear (D) obvious

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. B

**Exercise 3.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_1. 温驯的  
(A) rude (B) generous (C) tame (D) fame
- \_\_\_2. 点头

(A) vanish (B) spy (C) howl (D) nod

\_\_\_ 3. 愤怒

(A) wage (B) voyage (C) pitch (D) rage

\_\_\_ 4. 犯; 作

(A) commit (B) relieve (C) release (D) scorn

\_\_\_ 5. 淹死

(A) wage (B) drown (C) vaccinate (D) trap

**【解答】** 1. C      2. D      3. D      4. A      5. B

**Exercise 3.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *evident*

(A) firm (B) ambiguous (C) excellent (D) plain

\_\_\_ 2. *demand*

(A) direct (B) command (C) request (D) ~~grant~~

\_\_\_ 3. *encourage*

(A) disappoint (B) relieve (C) affect (D) wither

\_\_\_ 4. *frequent*

(A) shallow (B) evident (C) rude (D) rare

\_\_\_ 5. *shame*

(A) charm (B) rug (C) boldness (D) challenge

**【解答】** 1. B      2. D      3. A      4. D      5. C

**Exercise 3.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. He is the only w                s of the accident. (证人)
2. I saw him t                t the tent pole into the ground. (插入)
3. Aspirin will r                e your headache. (减轻)
4. Children usually like to read old f                es. (寓言)
5. Einstein was a mathematical and physical g                s. (天才)

**【解答】** 1. witness    2. thrust    3. relieve    4. fables    5. genius

**Exercise 3.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. We could see the *blaze* of a cheerful fire through the window.  
(A) pitch            (B) rage            (C) fury            (D) flame
- \_\_\_ 2. My parents will be *disappointed* if I failed the examination again.  
(A) despired        (B) disappeared (C) vanished        (D) released
- \_\_\_ 3. They put meat in the *trap* to attract the lion.  
(A) rug              (B) rag              (C) snare            (D) freight
- \_\_\_ 4. The church bells *summon* people to worship.  
(A) call              (B) commit        (C) pray              (D) attract
- \_\_\_ 5. The dog seemed *restless* as if he sensed some danger.  
(A) shallow        (B) uneasy        (C) generous        (D) painful
- \_\_\_ 6. Your friendship is most *precious* to me.  
(A) firm              (B) evident        (C) rude              (D) valuable
- \_\_\_ 7. We heard a wolf *howl* near the house.  
(A) disappear        (B) yell              (C) drown            (D) thrust
- \_\_\_ 8. He refused to join the army, believing that he had no *moral* fight

to kill.

(A) ethical (B) normal (C) sound (D) bold

\_\_\_ 9. The car is my *property*; you can't use it without my permission.

(A) faculty

(B) possessions

(C) resort

(D) responsibility

\_\_\_ 10. The doctor said that the patient's heart was *sound*.

(A) healthy

(B) curious

(C) candid

(D) neutral

**【解答】** 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. A

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 4

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. Just before the sunset the *peasant* stopped working in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) factory (B) field
2. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ now and *resume* working at 2 o'clock.  
(A) stop (B) start
3. The little girl was *frightened* by the \_\_\_\_\_ dog.  
(A) horrible (B) beautiful
4. He looked \_\_\_\_\_ as if he had seen a *ghost*.  
(A) happy (B) pale
5. Your hair is so *tangled* that it looked as if \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) it has not been combed for a week  
(B) it has been combed every day

△ 解答 △  
1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A

## 《第一部分》

**accentuate**  
[æk'sentʃueit]  
v. 使更为明显

The dark frame **accentuates** the brightness of the picture. 暗框使画的亮度更明显。

**aim** [eim]  
v. 瞄准

He **aimed** at the lion, fired, and killed it. 他瞄准狮子, 开枪, 然后把它打死了。

n. 瞄准

The hunter took **aim** at the lion. 那猎人瞄准狮子。

**audience** ['ɔ:djəns]  
n. 观众

The **audience** were very excited by the show. 观众因表演而非常兴奋。

<b>bless</b> [bles] v. 祝福 ☒ damn, curse	They brought the children to church and the priest <b>blessed</b> them.	他们带孩子到教堂牧师为他们祝福。
<b>bundle</b> ['bʌndl] n. 包; 包裹	We sent her a large <b>bundle</b> of present on her birthday.	我们在她生日时送她一大包礼物。
<b>characteristic</b> [ˌkærɪktə'ristɪk] n. 特征 v. characterize	What are the <b>characteristics</b> that distinguish the Chinese from the Japanese?	区别中国人和日本人的特征是什么?
<b>communicate</b> [kə'mju:nikeɪt] v. 1. 联络 2. 传达 n. communication	We can now <b>communicate</b> with people in Europe and America by telephone.  Radio, telephone, and newspaper quickly <b>communicates</b> news to all parts of the world.	我们现在可以靠电话和在欧洲及美洲的人联络。  收音机、电视机和报纸能迅速地把消息传达到全世界。
<b>connect</b> [kə'nekt] v. 连接 n. connection	The two towns are <b>connected</b> by a railway.	这两个市镇由铁路连接。
<b>correspond</b> [ˌkɒrɪs'pɒnd] v. 1. 通信 2. 符合 n. correspondence	Janet and Bob <b>corresponded</b> for many years before they met.  The house exactly <b>corresponds</b> with my needs.	珍妮特和鲍伯在见面前已通了好几年信。  这栋房子正好符合我的需要。
<b>darken</b> ['dɑ:kən] v. 变黑 adj. dark	The sky quickly <b>darkened</b> after sunset.	日落后, 天空很快地变黑。

**Exercise 4.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The priest \_\_\_\_\_ the bread and wine in preparation for the ceremony.

2. His face was \_\_\_\_\_ with anger when he heard the bad news.
3. A popular television program may have a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of several million people.
4. A useful \_\_\_\_\_ of the cat is its ability to catch and kill mice.
5. His expenses do not \_\_\_\_\_ to his income.

【解答】 1. blessed    2. darkened    3. audience    4. characteristic  
5. correspond

《第二部分》

<b>deny</b> [di'nai] v. 拒绝 n. denial	Their employer <b>denied</b> them an increase of income.	他们的老板拒绝给他们加薪。
<b>discharge</b> [dis'tʃɑ:dʒ] v. 1. 排出 2. 解雇 同 dismiss	Factory chimneys <b>discharge</b> smoke into the atmosphere and make it dirty.  The servant was <b>discharged</b> for being dishonest.	工厂的烟囱排烟到空气里,造成空气污染。  这仆人因不诚实而被解雇。
<b>dull</b> [dʌl] adj. 钝的 同 blunt 反 sharp	The blade of this knife is so <b>dull</b> that it will not cut a redish.	这把刀的刀锋太钝,不能切萝卜。
<b>endeavor</b> [in'devə] n. 竭力 同 effort v. 努力	He made an <b>endeavor</b> to save the drowning girl.  The sick man did not <b>endeavor</b> to get better.	他竭力去救那快要淹死的女孩。  那病人没有努力使自己的病况好一点。
<b>excellence</b> ['eksələns] n. 杰出 adj. excellent	His teacher praised him for the <b>excellence</b> of his report.	他的老师因他杰出的报告而称赞他。

<b>fade</b> [feɪd] v. 枯萎 同 wither	The flowers in the garden <i>faded</i> at the end of summer.	花园里的花在夏末时枯萎。
<b>fist</b> [fɪst] n. 拳头	He raised his <i>fist</i> and threatened to hit me.	他举起拳头威胁要打我。
<b>frighten</b> ['fraɪtn] v. 害怕 n. fright	She was <i>frightened</i> to look down from the top of the tall building.	她害怕从高楼的顶端往下看。
<b>ghost</b> [ɡəʊst] n. 鬼魂 同 apparition	They claim that the <i>ghost</i> of the murdered man appears every night.	他们声称那被谋杀者的鬼魂每晚出现。
<b>hardship</b> ['hɑːdʃɪp] n. 艰难 同 comfort	Hunger, cold and sickness were among the <i>hardships</i> of pioneer life.	饥饿、寒冷和疾病都是拓荒者艰难生活中的一部分。

**Exercise 4.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The old man's hearing has become \_\_\_\_\_, and you must speak loudly to him.
2. The Yellow River \_\_\_\_\_ its water into the Yellow Sea.
3. Everything is clear; how can we \_\_\_\_\_ the truth of his statement?
4. All memories of her childhood had \_\_\_\_\_ from her mind.
5. Thunder and lightning \_\_\_\_\_ most children and many adults.

**【解答】** 1. dull 2. discharges 3. deny 4. faded 5. frighten

《第三部分》

<b>huge</b> [hjuːdʒ] adj. 极大的	Samson was a man of <i>huge</i> physical strength.	参孙是个力量极大的人。
<b>inferior</b> [ɪn'fɪəriə] adj. 较低的	His grades are <i>inferior</i> to mine this semester.	这学期他的分数比我低。



<b>invent</b> [in'vent] v. 发明 n. invention	Alexander Graham Bell <b>invented</b> the telephone in 1876.	亚历山大·格雷安·贝尔一八七六年发明电话。
<b>lighten</b> ['laitn] v. 照亮	A candle <b>lightened</b> the darkness of the great hall.	一支蜡烛照亮了黑暗的大厅。
<b>male</b> [meil] n. 男性 ♀ female	Boys and men are <b>males</b> ; girls and women are females.	男孩和男人是男性;女孩和女人是女性。
<b>merit</b> ['merit] n. 价值 ☐ worth	Each child will get a mark according to the <b>merit</b> of his work.	每个孩子都会依其工作的表现而被评分。
<b>mortal</b> ['mɔ:tl] adj. 1. 致命的  2. 人类的 n. mortality	He received a <b>mortal</b> wound soon after the battle began.  It's beyond <b>mortal</b> power to bring a dead man back to life.	战争才开始不久,他就得了致命的伤。  使死人复生是人力所不能及的。
<b>opportunity</b> [,ɒpə'tju:niti] n. 机会	I am glad to have this <b>opportunity</b> of speaking to you.	我很高兴有和你说话的机会。
<b>palace</b> ['pælis] n. 宫殿	His home is a <b>palace</b> compared with our poor little house.	他家和我们贫穷的小房子比起来,可算是个宫殿。
<b>peasant</b> ['pezənt] n. 农夫;农人 ☐ farmer	Many <b>peasants</b> were needed to help the farmer with the harvest.	这农夫需要许多农人来帮忙采收。

**Exercise 4.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. They are building a new \_\_\_\_\_ for their king.
2. For most birds the \_\_\_\_\_ is bigger and more brightly colored than the female.

3. I have had no \_\_\_\_\_ to give him your message, because I have not seen him.
4. Edison didn't \_\_\_\_\_ many useful things for money.
5. Whales and elephants are \_\_\_\_\_ animals.

【解答】 1. palace 2. male 3. opportunity 4. invent 5. huge

#### 《第四部分》

<b>pity</b> ['pɪtɪ] n. 怜悯 adj. pitiful	I gave the beggar some money, feeling <b>pity</b> for him.	我可怜那乞丐, 给了他一些钱。
<b>preface</b> ['prefɪs] n. 序言	What did the writer say in the <b>preface</b> of the book?	作者在这本书的序言里说什么?
<b>proportion</b> [prə'pɔ:ʃən] n. 比例	The <b>proportion</b> of sunny days to rainy days last month was four to one.	上个月晴天和雨天的比例是四比一。
<b>range</b> [reɪndʒ] n. 范围 同 scope, extent	The power of nature is outside the <b>range</b> of human understanding.	大自然的力量超过人类所能理解的范围。
<b>religious</b> [rɪ'lɪdʒəs] adj. 宗教的 n. religion	<b>Religious</b> services are held here every Sunday.	每周日都在此举行宗教仪式。
<b>resume</b> [rɪ'zju:m] v. 继续 n. resumption	We <b>resumed</b> our journey after a short rest.	休息片刻后我们继续旅行。
<b>ruin</b> ['ru(:)ɪn] n. 破坏 同 destruction v. 破坏 同 destroy, spoil	Proper care protects our property from <b>ruin</b> .  She poured water all over my painting and <b>ruined</b> it.	适当的照顾可以保护我们的资产免受损害。  她把水倒在我整个画上, 破坏了它。

<b>scrape</b> ['skreip] v. 刮; 削	The boy <i>scraped</i> the mud from his shoes.	那男孩刮掉鞋上的泥巴。
<b>sharp</b> ['ʃɑ:p] adj. 锋利的 adv. 整; 准 同 exactly	She cut the meat with a <i>sharp</i> knife. The meeting starts at two o'clock <i>sharp</i> ; don't be late.	她用锋利的刀切肉。 会议两点整开始; 不要迟到。
<b>skill</b> ['skil] n. 熟练; 技能	The teacher managed her pupils with wonderful <i>skill</i> .	这位老师熟练地管理她的学生。

**Exercise 4.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Too much smoking and drinking will \_\_\_\_\_ your health.
2. Mix water and orange juice in the \_\_\_\_\_ of three to one.
3. After two weeks' vacation, he \_\_\_\_\_ his work.
4. The policeman felt \_\_\_\_\_ for the lost and crying child.
5. Everyone within the \_\_\_\_\_ of his voice heard the remark and laughed.

**【解答】** 1. ruin 2. proportion 3. resumed 4. pity 5. range

#### 《第五部分》

<b>sour</b> ['sauə] adj. 酸的	Some people don't like lemon juice; it tastes <i>sour</i> .	有些人不喜欢柠檬汁, 因为它是酸的。
<b>square</b> ['skweə] n. 正方形	A <i>square</i> has four equal sides and four 90-degree angles.	正方形有四个等边和四个九十度的角。
<b>stout</b> ['staut] adj. 肥胖的 同 fat 同 slender	He was too <i>stout</i> to fit into his old clothes.	他太胖, 以致穿不下旧衣服。
<b>superintendent</b> [,sju:pərin'tendənt] n. 监督者	He is <i>superintendent</i> of this school.	他是这所学校的督学。

<b>tangle</b> <i>v.</i> 缠结 [ˈtæŋɡl] 同 entangle 反 disentangle	I don't like to sew with thread that <b>tangles</b> easily.	我不喜欢用容易打结的线缝。
<b>thumb</b> [θʌm] <i>n.</i> 拇指	He accidentally hit his <b>thumb</b> with the hammer.	他不小心用铁锤敲着了拇指。
<b>treaty</b> [ˈtriːti] <i>n.</i> 条约 同 agreement	The peace <b>treaty</b> was signed in Paris last summer.	和平条约于去年夏天在巴黎签订。
<b>vanish</b> [ˈvæniʃ] <i>v.</i> 消失 同 disappear	Their fear <b>vanished</b> when the storm ended.	当暴风雨结束, 他们的忧虑也消失了。
<b>warfare</b> [ˈwɔːfɜː] <i>n.</i> 战争 同 war	Civilian as well as soldiers take part in modern <b>warfare</b> .	现代战争中, 平民同士兵一样要参加。
<b>witty</b> [ˈwiti] <i>adj.</i> 机智的	A <b>witty</b> person makes <b>witty</b> remarks.	机智的人说话机智。

**Exercise 4.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The thief ran into the crowd and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. That trade \_\_\_\_\_ was signed by five countries.
3. Most green grapes or apples taste \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Your glove has a hole in the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of our school is responsible for our education.

**【解答】** 1. vanished 2. treaty 3. sour 4. thumb 5. superintendent

## 成果测验

**Exercise 4.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_ 1. a *bunch* of flowers  
(A) field (B) sum (C) bundle (D) file
- \_\_\_\_ 2. major *characteristics* of the animal  
(A) features (B) realms (C) knots (D) testimonies
- \_\_\_\_ 3. to *deny* one's offer  
(A) preach (B) reject (C) curse (D) accept
- \_\_\_\_ 4. a *dull* color  
(A) keen (B) ghastly (C) horrible (D) dim
- \_\_\_\_ 5. to make every *endeavor*  
(A) effort (B) evidence (C) incident (D) skill
- \_\_\_\_ 6. the *faded* flowers  
(A) rubbed (B) vanished (C) uttered (D) withered
- \_\_\_\_ 7. a limited *range* of ideas  
(A) charm (B) scope (C) snare (D) aim
- \_\_\_\_ 8. to *devise* a machine  
(A) bend (B) hire (C) invent (D) repair
- \_\_\_\_ 9. a certificate of *merit*  
(A) worth (B) ceremony (C) summit (D) commerce
- \_\_\_\_ 10. a peace *treaty*  
(A) testimony (B) agreement (C) trade (D) peasant

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. B

**Exercise 4.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_1. 排出  
(A) deny (B) frighten (C) vanish (D) discharge
- \_\_\_2. 拳头  
(A) bunch (B) fist (C) thumb (C) finger
- \_\_\_3. 致命的  
(A) keen (B) sharp (C) mortal (D) huge
- \_\_\_4. 破坏  
(A) ruin (B) despair (C) cemetery (D) curse
- \_\_\_5. 督学  
(A) excellence (B) superintendent (C) faculty (D) palace

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 4.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_1. *sharp*  
(A) huge (B) shallow (C) blunt (D) lazy
- \_\_\_2. *slender*  
(A) stout (B) dull (C) tame (D) flimsy
- \_\_\_3. *vanish*  
(A) draw (B) appear (C) wither (D) deny
- \_\_\_4. *bless*  
(A) confuse (B) stoop (C) sprinkle (D) damn
- \_\_\_5. *comfort*  
(A) peak (B) trap (C) suffering (D) mercy

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C

**Exercise 4.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. There was a large a                      e at the theater. (观众)
2. Would you like to c                      d with an English boy? (通信)
3. His e                      r to persuade her to go with him failed. (努力)
4. When he returns, he will r                      e his previous job. (继续)
5. You'd better use a ruler to draw a s                      e. (正方形)

**【解答】** 1. audience 2. correspond 3. endeavor 4. resume 5. square

**Exercise 4.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. She became *stout* as she grew older.  
(A) tall (B) fat (C) stiff (D) rude
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. We *scraped* the old paint from the furniture.  
(A) rubbed (B) resumed (C) rejected (D) released
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. He won a *huge* sum of money in the horse-race game.  
(A) generous (B) enormous (C) grand (D) splendid
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Her white dress *accentuated* the redness of her sunburned arms.  
(A) lightened (B) affirmed (C) encouraged (D) emphasized
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Most foods are not good to eat when they have gone *sour*.  
(A) sore (B) rotten (C) bitter (D) acid

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. D

**Exercise 4.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当词性,填入空格中:

1. *invent*                      Necessity is the mother of \_\_\_\_\_.
2. *deny*                      The minister asked the newspaper to print a \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_

the true story.

3. *correspond*      The library bought all the \_\_\_\_\_ between Queen Victoria and her daughters.
4. *communicate*      Radio and television are important means of \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *mortal*              If this disease spreads in the country, the doctors fear that there'll be a high \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. invention          2. denial          3. correspondence  
4. communication      5. mortality

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。



## LESSON 5

## 预备测验

◎ 选出最适当的答语:

- The *blind* man \_\_\_\_\_ things clearly.  
(A) cannot see (B) can see
- There are some *deposits* at the \_\_\_\_\_ of the bottle.  
(A) top (B) bottom
- The President is *burdened* with \_\_\_\_\_ for decisions which may affect the whole country.  
(A) responsibility (B) happiness
- His mother \_\_\_\_\_ a box and *disclosed* what was in it.  
(A) opened (B) hid
- He has a *humble* job with very \_\_\_\_\_ wages.  
(A) high (B) low

## △ 解答 △

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**accept** [ək'sept]

v. 接受  
同 receive

She asked me to go to the party and I **accepted** her invitation.

她请我去赴宴, 而我也接受了她的邀请。

**alarm** [ə'lɑ:m]

n. 恐惧  
同 fear

Small earthquakes are so common here that people don't feel much **alarm** at them.

小地震在此常发生, 因此人们对它们并不感到很害怕。

**author** ['ɔ:θə]

n. 作者

Do you know who the **author** of this novel is?

你知道这本小说的作者是谁吗?

<b>blind</b> ˈblaɪnd adj. 瞎的	The deaf and the <b>blind</b> deserve sympathy and help.	聋子和瞎子应该得到同情和帮助。
<b>burden</b> ˈbɜːdn v. 使负重担 n. 负担	The mule was <b>burdened</b> with heavy loads. She had too heavy a <b>burden</b> and became sick.	那骡子负着重担。 她负担太重,因而生病。
<b>charitable</b> ˈtʃærɪtəbl adj. 慈善的 n. charity	He was a <b>charitable</b> man who use his wealth for the poor and sick man.	他是个慈善的人,用他的财富去帮助穷人和病人。
<b>companion</b> n. 同伴 [kəmˈpænjən] [colleague]	John traveled around the world with me as my <b>companion</b> .	约翰和我结伴一起环游世界。
<b>conquer</b> ˈkɒŋkə v. 克服	Scientists are seeking ways to <b>conquer</b> cancer.	科学家正在寻找方法以克服癌症。
<b>costume</b> ˈkɒstjuːm n. 服装 [dress]	The professor was in academic <b>costume</b> when I saw him yesterday.	我昨天看到教授时,他正穿着大学服。
<b>dash</b> ˈdæʃ v. 投掷 [throw, hurl]	In a moment of anger he <b>dashed</b> the glass against the door.	他一时气愤而将杯子摔到门上。

**Exercise 5.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The Romans \_\_\_\_\_ much of the ancient world.
2. The guides at the museum were dressed in Chinese \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The design of the new car was not \_\_\_\_\_ by the public.
4. Tom helped the \_\_\_\_\_ man across the road.
5. A person who lives or travels with you as a friend and helper is your \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. conquered 2. costumes 3. accepted 4. blind  
5. companion

~~~~~《第二部分》~~~~~

|                                                                   |                                                                                                                                  |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>deposit</b> [di'pəzɪt]<br>n. 沉淀物                               | There is often a <b>deposit</b> of sand and mud at the mouth of a river.                                                         | 河口常有泥沙的沉淀。                  |
| v. 储存                                                             | He <b>deposited</b> quite a lot of money in the bank.                                                                            | 他把相当多的钱存在银行里。               |
| <b>disclose</b> v. 露出<br>[dis'kləʊz]<br>同 reveal<br>n. disclosure | The lifting of the curtain <b>disclosed</b> a beautiful painting.                                                                | 帘幕启开后,露出一幅美丽的图画。            |
| <b>dumb</b> [dʌm]<br>adj. 沉默的<br>同 mute                           | The class remained <b>dumb</b> when the teacher asked a difficult question.                                                      | 当老师问一难题时,全班哑口无言。            |
| <b>endure</b> [ɪn'djuə]<br>v. 忍受<br>n. endurance                  | Be quiet! I can't <b>endure</b> that noise any longer.                                                                           | 安静!我再也忍受不了那嘈杂声。             |
| <b>exception</b> [ɪk'sepʃən]<br>n. 例外<br>adj. exceptional         | You all must take the examination; I can make no <b>exception</b> .                                                              | 你们必须全体参加考试,我不允许有例外。         |
| <b>extreme</b> [ɪks'tri:m]<br>adj. 极度的<br>n. extremity            | The <b>extreme</b> penalty of the law is punishment by death.                                                                    | 法律上的极刑是死刑。                  |
| <b>flame</b> [fleɪm]<br>n. 火焰                                     | The whole village was in <b>flames</b> when we got there.                                                                        | 当我们到那里时,整个村子都陷入火海。          |
| <b>glance</b> [glɑ:ns]<br>n. 匆匆一瞥<br>v. 瞥视                        | He looked over the newspapers with a hasty <b>glance</b> .<br>I <b>glanced</b> out of the window to see if the rain had stopped. | 他匆匆地看过报纸。<br>我向窗外瞥一眼看雨是否已停。 |

|                            |                                                                  |                       |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>hardware</b> ['hɑ:dweə] | He bought a hammer and other <b>hardware</b> at the store.       | 他在那家店里买了一把铁锤和其他的五金工具。 |
| <i>n.</i> 五金工具             |                                                                  |                       |
| <b>humble</b> ['hʌmbəl]    | The vastness of the universe makes a person feel <b>humble</b> . | 宇宙的浩瀚使人觉得自身渺小。        |
| <i>adj.</i> 1. 卑微的         |                                                                  |                       |
| 2. 简陋的                     | Lincoln was born in a <b>humble</b> log cabin.                   | 林肯在一个简陋的小木屋里出生。       |

**Exercise 5.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. You must answer all the questions without \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Hellen Keller learned to speak; she was blind and deaf but not \_\_\_\_\_.
3. There are rich \_\_\_\_\_ of gold in those hills.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the burning candle was yellow.
5. Locks, nails, screws, knives and tools are \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. exception 2. dumb 3. deposits 4. flame 5. hardware

### 《第三部分》

|                              |                                                                 |                  |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>influence</b> ['ɪnfluəns] | His <b>influence</b> made me a better man.                      | 他的感化力使我成为一个更好的人。 |
| <i>n.</i> 感化力; 影响            |                                                                 |                  |
| <i>adj.</i> influential      |                                                                 |                  |
| <i>v.</i> 影响                 | Don't let me <b>influence</b> your decision.                    | 不要让我影响你的决定。      |
| 同 affect                     |                                                                 |                  |
| <b>investigate</b>           | The police <b>investigated</b> the cause of a railway accident. | 警察调查火车肇事的原因。     |
| ['ɪn'vestɪgeɪt]              |                                                                 |                  |
| <i>v.</i> 调查                 |                                                                 |                  |
| <i>n.</i> investigation      |                                                                 |                  |
| <b>lack</b> [læk]            | The plants died for <b>lack</b> of water.                       | 植物死于缺水。          |
| <i>n. v.</i> 缺乏              |                                                                 |                  |
| 同 shortage, want             |                                                                 |                  |

|                                                             |                                                                             |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>lightning</b> ['laɪtnɪŋ]<br>n. 闪电                        | <i>Lightning</i> is usually followed by thunder.                            | 在闪电之后通常有雷声。        |
| <b>mammal</b> ['mæməl]<br>n. 哺乳动物                           | A whale is not a fish, but a <i>mammal</i> .                                | 鲸不是鱼, 而是哺乳动物。      |
| <b>motion</b> ['mouʃən]<br>n. 动作<br>同 movement              | Avoid unnecessary <i>motion</i> of your hand while you are writing.         | 当你写字时, 避免不必要的手部动作。 |
| <b>normal</b> ['nɔːməl]<br>adj. 正常的<br>同 regular 反 abnormal | The <i>normal</i> temperature of the human body is 36.5 degrees Centigrade. | 人体正常的温度是摄氏二十六点五度。  |
| <b>oppose</b> [ə'pəʊz]<br>v. 反对<br>同 resist 反 agree         | I am very much <i>opposed</i> to your going abroad.                         | 我极力反对你出国。          |
| <b>palm</b> [pɑːm]<br>n. 手掌                                 | She put a coin in the <i>palm</i> of the beggar's hand.                     | 她将一枚硬币放在乞丐的手掌中。    |
| <b>peck</b> [pek]<br>v. 啄                                   | The bird <i>pecked</i> a hole in the tree.                                  | 那只鸟在树上啄个洞。         |

**Exercise 5.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ feeds its young with milk from the breast.
2. Detectives \_\_\_\_\_ crimes to find out who did them.
3. In the backyard I saw many hens \_\_\_\_\_ at the corn.
4. If a thing is in \_\_\_\_\_, it is not at rest.
5. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ building a new highway because of cost.

**【解答】** 1. mammal 2. investigate 3. pecking 4. motion  
5. oppose(d)

## 《第四部分》

|                                                              |                                                                                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>planet</b> ['plænit]<br>n. 行星                             | The earth is one of the <b>planets</b> that move around the sun.                               | 地球是绕太阳运转的行星之一。                  |
| <b>preparation</b><br>[ˌprepə'reiʃən]<br>n. 准备<br>v. prepare | We are getting things together in <b>preparation</b> for the trip.                             | 我们为准备旅行而收拾东西。                   |
| <b>proposal</b> [prə'pouzəl]<br>n. 建议<br>v. propose          | He has made a <b>proposal</b> that she should take a rest for a while.                         | 他建议她应该休息一会儿。                    |
| <b>rapid</b> ['ræpid]<br>adj. 迅速的<br>同 fast, swift           | The <b>rapid</b> development of Singapore surprised all other countries.                       | 新加坡的迅速发展,使所有其他的国家感到惊讶。          |
| <b>remarkable</b><br>[ri'mɑ:kəbl]<br>adj. 出众的                | She is <b>remarkable</b> for her sweet temper.                                                 | 她因温和的性情而出众。                     |
| <b>retain</b> [ri'tein]<br>v. 保留                             | She <b>retains</b> a clear memory of her schooldays.                                           | 她仍清楚记得她的求学时代。                   |
| <b>rust</b> [rʌst]<br>n. 锈                                   | The unpainted metal tools were covered with <b>rust</b> .                                      | 未上漆的金属工具布满了锈。                   |
| <b>scratch</b> [skrætʃ]<br>v. 划; 抓<br><br>n. 抓痕              | The man <b>scratched</b> a match on the wall.<br><br>He has a deep <b>scratch</b> on his face. | 那人在墙上划亮了一根火柴。<br><br>他脸上有道深的抓痕。 |
| <b>shave</b> [ʃeiv]<br>v. 刮胡子                                | Do you <b>shave</b> yourself or go to the barber's?                                            | 你是自己刮胡子,还是去理发厅?                 |
| <b>slant</b> [slɑ:nt]<br>n. 斜面<br>同 slope                    | The <b>slant</b> of the roof is too steep to climb.                                            | 屋顶的斜面太陡,无法攀登。                   |

**Exercise 5.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Man's landing on the moon is the most \_\_\_\_\_ event in all human history.
2. The champion has \_\_\_\_\_ his championship title longer than anyone else.
3. Plans for selling the new products are now in \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ on your hand will soon be well.
5. Please rub the \_\_\_\_\_ of the old helmet.

**【解答】** 1. remarkable 2. retained 3. preparation 4. scratch  
5. rust

《第五部分》

|                                        |                                                                                    |                           |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>sow</b> [sou]<br>v. 种植              | The farmer <b>sowed</b> the field with wheat.                                      | 那农民把小麦种在田里。               |
| <b>squirrel</b> ['skwɪrəl]<br>n. 松鼠    | The <b>squirrels</b> were very busy gathering nuts for the winter.                 | 松鼠正忙着为冬天采集胡桃。             |
| <b>strain</b> [streɪn]<br>v. 竭力        | He <b>strained</b> every muscle to lift the heavy rock.                            | 他竭尽全力来举起那块大石头。            |
| <b>supreme</b> [sjuˈpri:m]<br>adj. 最大的 | He showed <b>supreme</b> courage in his decision.                                  | 他的决定表现了最大的勇气。             |
| <b>tap</b> [tæp]<br>v. 轻拍<br><br>n. 龙头 | He <b>tapped</b> me on the shoulder.<br><br>Hot water flowed from the <b>tap</b> . | 他轻拍我的肩膀。<br><br>热水从龙头中流出。 |
| <b>thunder</b> ['θʌndə]<br>n. 打雷       | We had a lot of <b>thunder</b> this summer.                                        | 今年夏天经常打雷。                 |

|                                               |                                                                         |                   |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>tremble</b> ['trembl]<br>v. 颤抖             | She <b>trembled</b> when she heard the bad news.                        | 她听到坏消息时, 颤抖了起来。   |
| <b>vapor</b> ['veipə]<br>n. 蒸气                | Strange <b>vapors</b> rose from the dark lake.                          | 奇怪的蒸气从黑暗的湖中升起。    |
| <b>warrior</b> ['wɔriə]<br>n. 战士<br>同 soldier | The <b>warriors</b> couldn't defeat their enemy only with their spears. | 战士们无法只以他们的矛来击败敌人。 |
| <b>woe</b> [wou]<br>n. 灾祸<br>同 distress       | Sickness and poverty are common <b>woes</b> .                           | 疾病和贫穷是常见的灾祸。      |

**Exercise 5.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The President is the \_\_\_\_\_ commander of the armed forces.
2. After the lightning came the \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The farmer will \_\_\_\_\_ the wheat next week.
4. The children \_\_\_\_\_ with fear when they saw the accident.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ can easily climb trees.

**【解答】** 1. supreme 2. thunder 3. sow 4. trembled 5. Squirrels

### 成果测验

**Exercise 5.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

1. (A) soldier (B) peasant (C) warrior (D) fighter
2. (A) lack (B) shortage (C) want (D) ruin
3. (A) grief (B) flame (C) woe (D) distress
4. (A) shake (B) scratch (C) rub (D) scrape
5. (A) rapid (B) splendor (C) swift (D) quick



- \_\_\_6. (A) subjugate (B) conquer (C) ~~vanish~~ (D) vanquish  
 \_\_\_7. (A) reject (B) object (C) oppose (D) defeat  
 \_\_\_8. (A) endure (B) endeavor (C) stand (D) bear  
 \_\_\_9. (A) keep (B) hold (C) retain (D) resume  
 \_\_\_10. (A) close (B) show (C) reveal (D) disclose

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. B 9. D 10. A

**Exercise 5.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_1. 沉默的  
 (A) dull (B) dumb (C) dim (D) damp  
 \_\_\_2. 火焰  
 (A) flame (B) fame (C) shame (D) tame  
 \_\_\_3. 哺乳动物  
 (A) plant (B) squirrel (C) fable (D) mammal  
 \_\_\_4. 轻拍  
 (A) nod (B) tap (C) tangle (D) rub  
 \_\_\_5. 蒸气  
 (A) rust (B) fist (C) vapor (D) feature

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C

**Exercise 5.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_1. *cruel*  
 (A) dull (B) religious (C) benevolent (D) restless  
 \_\_\_2. *conceal*

(A) discharge (B) disclose (C) reject (D) vanish

\_\_\_ 3. *humble*

(A) proud (B) cheap (C) huge (D) firm

\_\_\_ 4. *burden*

(A) scrape (B) unload (C) tangle (D) connect

\_\_\_ 5. *sow*

(A) harvest (B) plant (C) bless (D) strain

**【解答】** 1. C      2. B      3. A      4. B      5. A

**Exercise 5.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. Please don't leave the t \_ \_ p running. (龙头)
2. Two persons were killed by the l \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ g last night. (闪电)
3. The w \_ \_ \_ \_ rs agreed to defend their castle to the last man. (战士)
4. The stars' i \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ e on men has not been proved. (影响)
5. Before writing your check, you must d \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ t some of your money in the bank. (储蓄)

**【解答】** 1. tap 2. lightning 3. warrior 4. influence 5. deposit

**Exercise 5.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. Grandfathers are usually *charitable* toward the mistakes of their grandchildren.  
(A) cruel (B) benevolent (C) enormous (D) ambitious
- \_\_\_ 2. She was gathering flowers with her *companions* in the valley.  
(A) challenges (B) warriors (C) trades (D) colleagues

- \_\_\_ 3. If you go to Scotland, you may see people in Highland *costume*.  
(A) dress (B) parcel (C) custom (D) charm
- \_\_\_ 4. The waves *dashed* the boat against the rocks.  
(A) pulled (B) rejected (C) hurled (D) resumed
- \_\_\_ 5. If help does not come, we must *endure* to the end.  
(A) bear (B) endeavor (C) retain (D) strain
- \_\_\_ 6. I could recognize the old car at a *glance*.  
(A) square (B) feature (C) flame (D) glimpse
- \_\_\_ 7. What *influenced* you to do it?  
(A) affirmed (B) affected (C) invited (D) interested
- \_\_\_ 8. They soon began to *investigate* the cause of the fire.  
(A) affirm (B) invent (C) ☒ examine (D) deny
- \_\_\_ 9. The farmers worried about the *lack* of rain.  
(A) shortage (B) drift (C) woe (D) burden.
- \_\_\_ 10. Japan made a *proposal* to Korea for increasing trade between two countries.  
(A) preparation (B) exception (C) suggestion (D) companion

【解答】 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C

## LESSON 6

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

1. We can see the \_\_\_\_\_ star at *dusk*.

(A) evening

(B) morning

2. He has some *rare* stamps which are \_\_\_\_\_ available.

(A) easily

(B) scarcely

3. She left her children at home with a *pang* of \_\_\_\_\_.

(A) happiness

(B) sadness

4. A *cottage* is a small house used by people during holidays in the \_\_\_\_\_.

(A) country

(B) city

5. He was *faint* with \_\_\_\_\_.

(A) praise and encouragement

(B) hunger and cold

△ 解答 △

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**accidental** *adj.* 偶然的

[ˌæksɪ'dentl]

同 unexpected

We became friends after our **accidental** meeting at the Christmas party.

在圣诞宴会偶然的相遇后, 我们成为朋友。

**ambition** [æm'bɪʃən]*n.* 雄心*adj.* ambitiousOne of his **ambitions** is to become a famous politician.

成为一个有名的政治家是他的雄心之一。

**authority** [ɔː'thɒrɪti]*n.* 权力*v.* authorizeA policeman has the **authority** to arrest speeding drivers.

警察有权力拘捕超速的司机。

|                                                                           |                                                                                         |                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>blossom</b> ['blɒsəm]<br>v. 开花                                         | All the orchards <b>blossom</b> in spring.                                              | 所有的果树在春天开花。                 |
| n. 开花的状态或时期<br>同 bloom, flower                                            | The cherry trees are in full <b>blossom</b> now.                                        | 樱花正在盛开。                     |
| <b>bureau</b> ['bjʊərəʊ]<br>n. 局<br>同 office                              | An information <b>bureau</b> collects and keeps various facts.                          | 新闻局收集和保存多方面的事实。             |
| <b>charm</b> [tʃɑ:m]<br>n. 迷人; 魅力<br>同 attraction<br>反 ugliness           | His essays have a <b>charm</b> of style that can't be found in other writers.           | 他的文章有一种迷人的风格, 这在其他作家中是找不到的。 |
| <b>comparison</b> n. 比较<br>[kəm'pærɪsn]<br>v. compare<br>adj. comparative | The building in Taipei are small in <b>comparison</b> with the skyscrapers in New York. | 台北的建筑物和纽约的摩天楼相比, 算是小的。      |
| <b>conscience</b> ['kɒnʃəns]<br>n. 是非之心; 良心<br>adj. conscientious         | Jean's got no <b>conscience</b> ; she'd steal anything from anybody.                    | 珍没有是非之心, 她会从任何人身上偷走任何东西。    |
| <b>cottage</b> ['kɒtɪdʒ]<br>n. 小屋<br>同 cabin                              | He lives in a <b>cottage</b> in the woods.                                              | 他住在森林里的小屋内。                 |
| <b>dawn</b> [dɔ:n]<br>n. 黎明<br>同 daybreak 反 dusk                          | We started our trip at <b>dawn</b> in order to get there before noon.                   | 为了在午前到达该处, 我们黎明即动身上路。       |

**Exercise 6.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. If you have a guilty \_\_\_\_\_, you feel or know you have done wrong.
2. They worked hard from \_\_\_\_\_ till dusk.
3. It was \_\_\_\_\_ that we arrived at the party at the same time.
4. Because he was filled with \_\_\_\_\_, he worked after school and on Saturday.

5. The teacher's \_\_\_\_\_ of the heart to a pump helped the students to understand its action.

【解答】 1. conscience 2. dawn 3. accidental 4. ambition  
5. comparison

## 《第二部分》

|                                                                   |                                                                                                                                              |                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <b>depress</b> [di'pres]<br>v. 1. 使沮丧<br>2. 使萧条<br>同 boost        | The rainy season always <b>depresses</b> me.<br><br>When business is <b>depressed</b> many men lose their positions.                         | 雨季总使我沮丧。<br><br>商业萧条时,许多人失业。             |
| <b>discourage</b> [dis'kʌrɪdʒ]<br>v. 1. 劝阻<br>2. 使气馁<br>同 depress | We tried to <b>discourage</b> him from climbing the mountain without a guide.<br><br>Try again! Don't let one failure <b>discourage</b> you. | 我们设法劝他不要没有向导就去爬山。<br><br>再试试!不要因一次失败就气馁。 |
| <b>dusk</b> [dʌsk]<br>n. 傍晚<br>同 twilight                         | The buildings over there are scarcely visible in the <b>dusk</b> .                                                                           | 傍晚时,那里的建筑物几乎看不见。                         |
| <b>exchange</b> [iks'tʃeɪndʒ]<br>n. 交换<br>同 interchange           | <b>Exchange</b> of prisoners during a war is not very common.                                                                                | 战争中交换战俘不常见。                              |
| <b>extraordinary</b><br>[iks'trɔ:dɪnəri]<br>adj. 惊人的              | Eight feet is an <b>extraordinary</b> height for a man.                                                                                      | 一个人身高八尺是惊人的。                             |
| <b>faint</b> [feɪnt]<br>adj. 微弱的                                  | She called for help in a <b>faint</b> voice.                                                                                                 | 她以微弱的声音求助。                               |

|                                                  |                                                                                                                             |                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>flash</b> [flæʃ]<br>v. 闪光<br>同 sparkle        | The lighting <b>flashed</b> across the sky.                                                                                 | 闪电划过天空。                           |
| <b>frost</b> [frɒst]<br>n. 霜<br>adj. frosty      | <b>Frost</b> has killed several of our young plants.                                                                        | 霜已搞坏了我们好几株幼苗。                     |
| <b>gleam</b> [gli:m]<br>n. 微弱的光<br>同 flash, beam | A <b>gleam</b> of light shone through the partly opened door.                                                               | 微弱的光线从半开的门里射进来。                   |
| <b>harness</b> ['hɑ:nɪs]<br>n. 马具<br>v. 利用       | The saddle is a part of a horse's <b>harness</b> .<br><br>We can <b>harness</b> water in a river to produce electric power. | 坐鞍是马具的一部分。<br><br>我们可以利用河中的水产生电力。 |

**Exercise 6.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The scientist is a man of \_\_\_\_\_ genius.
2. The young buds on the tree have been damaged by the late \_\_\_\_\_.
3. There have been numerous \_\_\_\_\_ of views between the two countries.
4. The wet weather \_\_\_\_\_ people from going to the sports meeting.
5. I was \_\_\_\_\_ after reading the newspaper that was filled with news of accidents.

**【解答】** 1. extraordinary 2. frost 3. exchanges 4. discouraged  
5. depressed

### 《第三部分》

|                            |                                                       |           |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>hymn</b> [him]<br>n. 圣歌 | The people joined together in singing a <b>hymn</b> . | 人们在一起唱圣歌。 |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------|

|                                                                       |                                                                                                                                     |                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| v. 唱赞美歌                                                               | They <i>hymned</i> their thanks to God.                                                                                             | 他们向上帝唱赞美歌以表达感谢。                           |
| <b>inform</b> [in'fɔ:m]<br>v. 告知                                      | Can you <i>inform</i> me where he lives right now?                                                                                  | 你能告诉我他现在住在哪里吗?                            |
| <b>invite</b> [in'vait]<br>v. 邀请<br>n. invitation                     | She <i>invited</i> her friends to her birthday party.                                                                               | 她邀请朋友参加她的生日宴会。                            |
| <b>ladder</b> ['lædə]<br>n. 梯子                                        | The boy climbed the <i>ladder</i> to get into their tree house.                                                                     | 男孩子爬梯子以便进入他们的树上小屋。                        |
| <b>limb</b> [lim]<br>n. 肢; 手足                                         | That man with one arm lost his other <i>limb</i> in an airplane crash.                                                              | 那独臂男人是在一次坠机中失掉一条手臂的。                      |
| <b>manage</b> ['mænidʒ]<br>v. 1. 驾驶<br>同 handle<br>2. 处理<br>同 conduct | He couldn't <i>manage</i> his horse, and it threw him to the ground.<br><br>They hired a young man to <i>manage</i> their business. | 他驾驭不住马, 于是被摔到地上。<br><br>他们雇用一个青年来处理他们的业务。 |
| <b>method</b> ['meθəd]<br>n. 方法                                       | Jonas Salk found a new <i>method</i> of teaching music.                                                                             | 乔纳·沙克找到一个教音乐的新方法。                         |
| <b>motive</b> ['moutiv]<br>n. 动机<br>同 cause                           | We despise those who act from low or selfish <i>motive</i> .                                                                        | 我们看不起那些行为出自下流或自私动机的人。                     |
| <b>nostril</b> ['nɔ:tril]<br>n. 鼻孔                                    | The Indian princess wore a diamond in her right <i>nostril</i> .                                                                    | 印第安公主在右鼻孔中戴了一颗钻石。                         |
| <b>oral</b> ['ɔ:rəl]<br>adj. 口头的                                      | She gives us an <i>oral</i> report instead of a written report.                                                                     | 她以口头代替书面向我们报告。                            |



**Exercise 6.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. We were \_\_\_\_\_ that the prisoner had escaped.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ all our relatives to my grandfather's sixtieth birthday party.
3. She knows how to \_\_\_\_\_ her husband when he is angry.
4. A (n) \_\_\_\_\_ agreement is not enough; we must have a written promise.
5. A rope \_\_\_\_\_ was hung over the ship's side.

【解答】 1. informed 2. invited 3. manage 4. oral 5. ladder

#### 《第四部分》

|                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                |                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>pang</b> [pæŋ]<br>n. 突然的剧痛                                                            | It is hard to stand the <b>pangs</b> of a toothache.                                                                                           | 一阵阵的牙疼很难忍受。                            |
| <b>peculiar</b> [pi'kju:ljə]<br>adj. 独特的<br>n. peculiarity                               | All cultures seem to have <b>peculiar</b> customs.                                                                                             | 所有的文化似乎都有独特的风俗。                        |
| <b>plate</b> [pleit]<br>n. 盘<br>同 dish                                                   | In America food is usually served on <b>plates</b> .                                                                                           | 在美国,食物通常装在盘里。                          |
| <b>preserve</b> [pri'zə:v]<br>v. 保留<br>n. preservation                                   | The city decided to <b>preserve</b> the beautiful old building as a museum.                                                                    | 该市决定保留那栋漂亮的旧建筑物作为博物馆。                  |
| <b>prospect</b> ['prɒspekt]<br>n. 1. 景色<br>同 view, scene<br>2. 希望<br>同 expectation, hope | From the top of the hill there is a beautiful <b>prospect</b> over the hill.<br><br>I see no <b>prospect</b> of his recovery from the disease. | 从山顶可以看到这山美丽的全景。<br><br>我看他没有希望能从疾病中康复。 |

|                                                                   |                                                                                                   |                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>rare</b> [rɛə]<br><i>adj.</i> 1. 稀有的<br>2. (指肉)半熟的             | Today tigers are <b>rare</b> animals in Taiwan.<br><br>I want my steak very <b>rare</b> , please. | 今日,老虎在台湾是稀有动物。<br><br>请把我的牛排煮生一点。 |
| <b>remedy</b> ['remidi]<br><i>n.</i> 药物<br>同 cure                 | This pill is a good <b>remedy</b> for a headache and toothache.                                   | 这药丸是治头痛和牙痛的良药。                    |
| <b>retire</b> [ri'taɪə]<br><i>v.</i> 退休                           | My father <b>retired</b> from his job at the age of 60.                                           | 我父亲六十岁时退休。                        |
| <b>scream</b> [skri:m]<br><i>n.</i> 尖叫声                           | A <b>scream</b> for help came from inside the building.                                           | 从那栋建筑物内传出一声尖厉的呼救声。                |
| <b>shed</b> [ʃed]<br><i>n.</i> 小屋;棚<br><br><i>v.</i> 流出<br>同 pour | The garden tools are in that <b>shed</b> .<br><br>We <b>shed</b> our blood for our country.       | 园艺用具在那间小屋内。<br><br>我们为国流血捐躯。      |

**Exercise 6.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. That way of speaking is \_\_\_\_\_ to people in this part of country.
2. They built a new school as a \_\_\_\_\_ for crowded classrooms.
3. Ancient Egyptians knew how to \_\_\_\_\_ dead bodies from decay.
4. She helped her mother wash the \_\_\_\_\_ in the kitchen.
5. Seeing no \_\_\_\_\_ of success, we quit the attempt to climb the mountain.

**【解答】** 1. peculiar 2. remedy 3. preserve 4. plates 5. prospect

## 《第五部分》

|                                                    |                                                                                |                     |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>slavery</b> ['sleivəri]<br>n. 奴隶制度<br>cf. slave | Many men fought for the abolition of <i>slavery</i> .                          | 许多人为废止奴隶制度而奋斗。      |
| <b>spacious</b> ['speɪʃəs]<br>adj. 宽敞的             | The rooms of the palace were <i>spacious</i> .                                 | 这座大厦的房间很宽敞。         |
| <b>staff</b> [stɑ:f]<br>n. 全体人员                    | The teaching <i>staff</i> of the school is excellent.                          | 该校的教员很优秀。           |
| <b>straw</b> [strɔ:]<br>n. 稻草                      | The farmers covered the barn floor with <i>straw</i> .                         | 农民们把稻草覆盖在谷仓的地板上。    |
| <b>surface</b> ['sə:fɪs]<br>n. 表面<br>□ bottom      | Leaves were floating on the <i>surface</i> of the pond.                        | 叶子漂浮在池塘面上。          |
| <b>tick</b> [tɪk]<br>n. 滴答声                        | The silence were broken only by the <i>tick</i> of the clock.                  | 只有钟的滴答声打破了寂静。       |
| <b>tremendous</b><br>[tri'mendəs]<br>adj. 巨大的      | The army suffered a <i>tremendous</i> defeat in that battle.                   | 在那次战役中,陆军惨败。        |
| <b>variety</b> [və'raɪəti]<br>n. 多样性               | The store over there has a great <i>variety</i> of toys.                       | 那边那家商店有很多各式各样的玩具。   |
| <b>waterfall</b> ['wɔ:təfɔ:l]<br>n. 瀑布             | The Niagara Falls is one of the most beautiful <i>waterfalls</i> in the world. | 尼亚加拉瀑布是世界上最美丽的瀑布之一。 |
| <b>worm</b> [wɜ:m]<br>n. 虫                         | The <i>worm</i> turns the soil.                                                | 虫翻土。                |

**Exercise 6.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. A \_\_\_\_\_ hat protects us from the hot sun.
2. On the \_\_\_\_\_ the two men seemed friendly.

3. The President has \_\_\_\_\_ responsibilities for the nation.  
 4. Many Africans were captured and sold into \_\_\_\_\_.  
 5. We demanded more \_\_\_\_\_ in the food.

**【解答】** 1. straw 2. surface 3. tremendous 4. slavery 5. variety

### 成果测验

**Exercise 6.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_ 1. her *method* of teaching children  
 (A) effort (B) way (C) ability (D) opinion
- \_\_\_\_ 2. a *prospect* of victory  
 (A) proposal (B) hope (C) motive (D) woe
- \_\_\_\_ 3. a humanistic *motive*  
 (A) suggestion (B) conscience (C) cause (D) mercy
- \_\_\_\_ 4. to *shed* tears of sorrow  
 (A) wash (B) pour (C) hurl (D) retain
- \_\_\_\_ 5. an *accidental* happening  
 (A) casual (B) unusual (C) usual (D) benevolent
- \_\_\_\_ 6. a *spacious* hall  
 (A) roomy (B) tremendous (C) magnificent (D) special
- \_\_\_\_ 7. an *extraordinary* power  
 (A) military (B) exceptional (C) foreign (D) human
- \_\_\_\_ 8. a *remedy* for cancer  
 (A) harness (B) cause (C) cure (D) pang
- \_\_\_\_ 9. a *gleam* of firelight

(A) blossom (B) bureau (C) flash (D) frost

\_\_\_ 10. at a *tremendous* speed

(A) normal (B) dreadful (C) slow (D) specified

**【解答】** 1. B 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. C 10. B

**Exercise 6.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

\_\_\_ 1. 表面

(A) deposit (B) surface (C) planet (D) slant

\_\_\_ 2. 良心

(A) conscience (B) mammal (C) motive (D) pang

\_\_\_ 3. 虫

(A) straw (B) limb (C) worm (D) dawn

\_\_\_ 4. 肢

(A) limb (B) tick (C) fist (D) thumb

\_\_\_ 5. 魅力

(A) prospect (B) charm (C) cottage (D) palm

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 6.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词：

\_\_\_ 1. *surface*

(A) bottom (B) conscience (C) bureau (D) hymn

\_\_\_ 2. *monotony*

(A) ambition (B) hardship (C) ~~variety~~ (D) nonsense

3. *dawn* ~~黎明~~ *daybreak*  
 (A) dust (B) daybreak (C) authority (D) blossom .
4. *scarce* ~~稀少~~ *twilight*  
 (A) huge (B) common (C) religious (D) humble
5. *faint*  
 (A) dumb (B) notable (C) rare (D) strong

【解答】 1. A      2. C      3. A      4. B      5. D

**Exercise 6. 9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词, 每一格代表一个字母:

1. He explained the new policy to the editorial s      f. (全体人员)
2. We heard someone s      m in fright. (尖叫)
3. She didn't like the work, because it lacked v      y. (多样性)
4. The child put the watch to his ear and listened to its t      k. (滴答声)
5. The doctor put some medicine in each n      l. (鼻孔)

【解答】 1. staff    2. scream    3. variety    4. tick    5. nostril

**Exercise 6. 10** 选出最适合句意的一个单词:

1. I want to run away, but my \_\_\_\_\_ bothers me.  
 (A) pang      (B) remedy      (C) rust      (D) conscience
2. A boy who is filled with \_\_\_\_\_ always works hard.  
 (A) vapor      (B) ambition      (C) harness      (D) burden
3. He doesn't work in the office any longer; he \_\_\_\_\_ from his job several years ago.

(A) retired (B) retained (C) strained (D) resumed

4. Her letter \_\_\_\_\_ us how and when she expected to arrive.

(A) faded (B) blessed (C) informed (D) managed

5. I gave him my old tex-books and received a dictionary in \_\_\_\_\_.

(A) exchange (B) preparation (C) proposal (D) proportion

**【解答】** 1. D      2. B      3. A      4. C      5. A

**Exercise 6. 11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当词性,填入空格中:

1. *ambition* Jack is an \_\_\_\_\_ boy; he wants to become as famous as Edison.

2. *authority* I have \_\_\_\_\_ him to act for me while I am abroad.

3. *inform* Can you give me any \_\_\_\_\_ about this matter?

4. *retire* There have been several \_\_\_\_\_ recently.

5. *invite* I received an \_\_\_\_\_ card to her birthday party.

**【解答】** 1. ambitious      2. authorized      3. information  
4. retirements      5. invitation

## LESSON 7

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. A hard blow on the \_\_\_\_\_ *deafened* him for life.  
 (A) ~~ear~~ (B) eye
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ car on the dirt raised a great *dust*.  
 (A) standing (B) speeding
3. An *energetic* effort on the part of all members will ensure the \_\_\_\_\_ of our plan.  
 (A) success (B) failure
4. We could see many *lambs* in the \_\_\_\_\_ on our way to school.  
 (A) valley (B) river
5. The drunkard \_\_\_\_\_ a *pledge* never to drink again.  
 (A) sold (B) signed

△ 解答 △  
 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**accompany**  
 [ə'kʌmpəni]  
 v. 1. 陪; 伴

He *accompanied* his girl- 他陪着女朋友到机  
 friend to the airport. 场。

2. 伴奏

She *accompanied* the singer 她为演唱者担任钢  
 on the piano. 琴伴奏。

**amuse** [ə'mju:z]  
 v. 使笑  
 n. amusement  
 adj. amusing

The storyteller's jokes 说书人的笑话逗乐  
*amused* the children. 了孩子。



|                                                              |                                                                                                                                        |                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>avoid</b> [ə'void]<br>v. 避免<br>n. avoidance               | Children should try to <b>avoid</b> crossing the road except when the policeman stops the traffic.                                     | 孩子们应避免穿越马路, 除非有警察禁止车辆通行。              |
| <b>bomb</b> [bɒm]<br>n. 炸弹                                   | A time <b>bomb</b> explodes some time after it is placed in position.                                                                  | 定时炸弹被放置于定位后, 会在一段时间后爆炸。               |
| <b>burial</b> ['beriəl]<br>n. 葬礼                             | The <b>burial</b> of the dead sailor was performed at sea.                                                                             | 那死去船员的葬礼在海上举行。                        |
| <b>chase</b> [tʃeɪs]<br>v. 追赶<br>n. flee                     | The old lady saw the thief running up the street and <b>chased</b> him on her bicycle.                                                 | 老妇人看见小偷跑到街上, 便骑着脚踏车去追他。               |
| <b>compel</b> [kəm'pel]<br>v. 强迫                             | He was <b>compelled</b> by illness to give up his studies.                                                                             | 他因病被迫放弃学业。                            |
| <b>consent</b> [kən'sent]<br>v. 同意                           | He asked the girl to marry him and she <b>consented</b> .                                                                              | 他请求那女孩嫁给他, 她答应了。                      |
| <b>counterpart</b><br>['kauntəpɑ:t]<br>n. 1. 相当的人物<br>2. 配对物 | The Chinese foreign minister met his Canadian <b>counterpart</b> .<br><br>Your right hand is the <b>counterpart</b> of your left hand. | 中国外交部长会见加拿大外交部长。<br><br>你的右手和你左手互相配对。 |
| <b>deafen</b> ['defn]<br>v. 使聋<br>adj. deaf                  | A sudden explosion <b>deafened</b> us for a moment.                                                                                    | 突然的爆炸声使我们耳聋了一会儿。                      |

**Exercise 7.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The rain \_\_\_\_\_ us to stop our ball game.
2. As soon as we saw the enemy ship, we began to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ may be filled with a chemical substance and are sometimes dropped from aircraft.

4. The children \_\_\_\_\_ themselves by playing games while their parents talked.
5. The warships \_\_\_\_\_ the merchant-ships through the Mediterranean.

【解答】 1. compelled 2. chase 3. Bombs 4. amused  
5. accompanied.

## 《第二部分》

|                                                      |                                                                                         |                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>derive</b> [di'raiv]<br>v. 1. 获得                  | We have <b>derived</b> benefit from the new method of generation of electricity.        | 我们已从产生电力的新方法上获得益处。                    |
| 2. 起源                                                | The word "deride" is <b>derived</b> from the Latin "de" (down) and "ridere" (to laugh). | deride 这个词源于拉丁文 de (向下) 和 ridere (笑)。 |
| <b>display</b> [dis'plei]<br>v. 展示                   | Department stores <b>display</b> their goods in the windows.                            | 百货公司在窗口展示他们的货物。                       |
| <b>dust</b> [dʌst]<br>n. 灰尘<br>adj. dusty            | There was half an inch of <b>dust</b> on the books before I cleaned them.               | 在我清理这些书前, 有半寸的灰尘积在上面。                 |
| <b>energetic</b> [ˌenə'dʒetɪk]<br>adj. 精力充沛的         | Cool autumn days make us feel <b>energetic</b> .                                        | 凉爽的秋天使我们感到精力充沛。                       |
| <b>extent</b> [ɪks'tent]<br>n. 广博; 程度                | I was amazed at the <b>extent</b> of his knowledge.                                     | 我对他知识的广博极为惊异。                         |
| <b>fairy</b> ['feəri]<br>n. 小仙子                      | The <b>fairy</b> promised to grant the child's wish.                                    | 小仙子答应允诺那孩子的希望。                        |
| <b>flatter</b> ['flætə]<br>v. 奉承                     | He <b>flattered</b> her with flowers and expensive gifts.                               | 他用花和昂贵的礼物讨好她。                         |
| <b>frown</b> [fraʊn]<br>v. 蹙额; 不悦<br>同 scowl 同 smile | Mary wanted to go to Europe by herself, but her parents <b>frowned</b> on the idea.     | 玛丽想要单独去欧洲, 可是她的父母不同意这个计划。             |

|                                              |                                                                   |                   |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>glimpse</b> [glɪmps]<br>n. 一瞥             | I caught a <i>glimpse</i> of the falls as our train went by.      | 当我们的火车经过时,我瞥见了瀑布。 |
| <b>harvest</b> ['hɑ:vɪst]<br>n. 采收<br>同 crop | Many men were needed to help the farmer with the <i>harvest</i> . | 那农民需要许多人帮忙采收。     |

**Exercise 7.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ much pleasure from reading adventure stories.
2. The motor car raised a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ as it passed us.
3. I agree with your plans, but only to a certain \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He was only \_\_\_\_\_ her when he said that she sang well; he didn't really mean it.
5. My grandmother always \_\_\_\_\_ when she's putting thread into a needle.

**【解答】** 1. derives 2. dust 3. extent 4. flattering 5. frowns

### 《第三部分》

|                                                                     |                                                                               |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>inhabit</b> [ɪn'hæbɪt]<br>v. 居住<br>n. inhabitant                 | The earth we <i>inhabit</i> is a point in space.                              | 我们居住的地球只是太空中的一点。 |
| <b>involve</b> [ɪn'vɒlv]<br>v. 包括<br>同 include<br>同 exempt, exclude | Housekeeping <i>involves</i> cooking, washing dishes, sweeping, and cleaning. | 家务包括烹饪、洗碟、打扫及洗刷。 |
| <b>lamb</b> [læm]<br>n. 小羊                                          | The <i>lambs</i> were playing on the hillside.                                | 小羊在山坡上玩耍。        |
| <b>liquid</b> ['lɪkwɪd]<br>n. 液体                                    | Water, oil, and milk are <i>liquids</i> .                                     | 水、油和奶是液体。        |

|                                                                            |                                                                                                       |                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>adj.</i> 流体的                                                            | The sick man could eat only <i>liquid</i> foods.                                                      | 那病人只能吃流质食物。                      |
| <b>mighty</b> <i>adj.</i> 强大的<br>[ˈmaɪti]<br>同 powerful<br><i>n.</i> might | The <i>mighty</i> battleship was so badly damaged that it could not be used again.                    | 庞大的战舰受到严重的损害,无法再使用。              |
| <b>mount</b> [maʊnt]<br><i>v.</i> 1. 登上<br>2. 骑上                           | He <i>mounted</i> the bicycle and rode away.<br><br>The soldiers <i>mounted</i> on fine black horses. | 他登上脚踏车后骑走了。<br><br>士兵们骑在黑色漂亮的马上。 |
| <b>notify</b> [ˈnəʊtɪfaɪ]<br><i>v.</i> 通知<br>同 inform                      | Our teacher <i>notified</i> us that there would be a test on Monday.                                  | 老师通知我们星期一要考试。                    |
| <b>orbit</b> [ˈɔːbɪt]<br><i>n.</i> 轨道                                      | The moon travels in an <i>orbit</i> around the earth.                                                 | 月球在绕着地球的轨道上运行。                   |
| <b>paradise</b> [ˈpærədaɪs]<br><i>n.</i> 天堂<br>同 heaven 同 hell             | The island was a <i>paradise</i> of birds and flowers.                                                | 此岛是花和鸟的天堂。                       |
| <b>peer</b> [piə]<br><i>v.</i> 细看<br>同 stare                               | She <i>peered</i> through the mist, trying to find the right way.                                     | 她透过雾中细看,想找到正确的路。                 |

**Exercise 7.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. A person as good as he deserves to go to \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He lifted up his little son, and \_\_\_\_\_ him on the donkey.
3. Jelly is not \_\_\_\_\_ but solid.
4. When my guest arrives, please \_\_\_\_\_ me.
5. The United States of America is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ nations in the world.

【解答】 1. paradise 2. mounted 3. liquid 4. notify 5. mightiest

《第四部分》

|                                                           |                                                                                                                        |                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>pledge</b> [pledʒ]<br>n. 保证<br>v. 发誓<br>同 promise, vow | I give my <b>pledge</b> that I will continue to help you.<br>They <b>pledged</b> themselves never to tell the secrets. | 我保证会继续帮助你。<br>他们发誓绝不泄密。           |
| <b>pressure</b> ['preʃə]<br>n. 压力<br>v. press             | The air <b>pressure</b> at sea level is nearly 15 pounds for each square inch.                                         | 海平面上的大气压力每一平方英寸约有十五磅。             |
| <b>prosper</b> ['prɒspə]<br>v. 兴隆                         | His business <b>prospered</b> at its new location.                                                                     | 他在新地点生意兴隆。                        |
| <b>raw</b> [rɔ:]<br>adj. 生的<br>同 unripe                   | Children like to eat <b>raw</b> fruits.                                                                                | 孩子们喜欢吃生的水果。                       |
| <b>remind</b> (ri'maind)<br>v. 使想起;提醒                     | This picture <b>reminds</b> me of the story I heard before.                                                            | 这幅画使我想起以前听过的故事。                   |
| <b>retreat</b> (ri'tri:t)<br>v. 退却                        | The enemy <b>retreated</b> before the advance of our soldiers.                                                         | 敌军在我们士兵的进攻下退却了。                   |
| <b>sacred</b> ['seikrid]<br>adj. 宗教上的;神圣的                 | The Bible and Koran are <b>sacred</b> writings.                                                                        | 圣经和可兰经都是宗教性著作。                    |
| <b>screen</b> (skri:n)<br>n. 纱;银幕                         | We have <b>screens</b> at the windows to keep out flies.                                                               | 我们的窗上有纱以防苍蝇。                      |
| <b>shelf</b> [ʃelf]<br>n. 1. 暗礁<br>2. 架;书架                | The wrecked ship rested on a <b>shelf</b> at the bottom of the sea.<br>I kept that book on the bottom <b>shelf</b> .   | 破毁的船只搁置在海底的暗礁上。<br>我把那本书放在底层的书架上。 |

**sleeve**[sli:v]      The **sleeves** of his coat were      他外套的袖子太  
*n* 袖      too long.      长。

**Exercise 7.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. I've forgotten what you said; will you \_\_\_\_\_ me of it?
2. The defeated army had to \_\_\_\_\_ hastily from the battlefield.
3. In India, the cow is a \_\_\_\_\_ animal.
4. The tailor shortened the \_\_\_\_\_ of his shirt.
5. The windows were covered with \_\_\_\_\_ to keep out insects.

**【解答】** 1. remind 2. retreat 3. sacred 4. sleeves 5. screens

### 《第五部分》

|                                |                                    |          |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------|
| <b>spare</b> [speə]            | Take my money but <b>spare</b>     | 拿我的钱,但饶我 |
| <i>v.</i> 赦免                   | my life!                           | 的命。      |
| <i>adj.</i> 空暇的                | She is looking for something       | 她正在找些能在闲 |
|                                | to read in her <b>spare</b> time.  | 暇时阅读的东西。 |
| <b>stability</b> [stə'biliti]  | A concrete wall has more           | 水泥墙比木栅栏稳 |
| <i>n.</i> 稳固                   | <b>stability</b> than a wooden     | 固得多。     |
| <i>adj.</i> stable             | fence.                             |          |
| <b>strawberry</b> ['strɔ:bəri] | We had <b>strawberries</b> and ice | 我们用草莓和冰淇 |
| <i>n.</i> 草莓                   | cream for dessert.                 | 淋做点心。    |
| <b>surgeon</b> ['sə:dʒən]      | A <b>surgeon</b> took out Fred's   | 外科医生取出了弗 |
| <i>n.</i> 外科医生                 | tonsils.                           | 瑞德的扁桃腺。  |
| <b>task</b> [tɑ:sk]            | The President has to per-          | 总统必须执行许多 |
| <i>n.</i> 工作                   | form many <b>tasks</b> .           | 工作。      |
| □ assignment, job              |                                    |          |
| <b>tide</b> [taid]             | They liked to walk along the       | 他们喜欢在落潮时 |
| <i>n.</i> 潮                    | beach at low <b>tidè</b> .         | 沿着海滨散步。  |
| <i>cf.</i> ebb                 |                                    |          |

|                                                        |                                                                                                                         |                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>trial</b> ['traɪəl]<br>n. 1. 试验<br>2. 审讯            | She learned to cook by <b>trial</b> and error.<br>In the <b>trial</b> , she changed her previous statement.             | 她借着尝试错误法学会烹饪。<br>在审讯时,她改变了先前的陈述。 |
| <b>vast</b> [vɑːst]<br>adj. 广大的                        | Texas and Alaska cover <b>vast</b> territories.                                                                         | 得克萨斯和阿拉斯加占地极大。                   |
| <b>waterproof</b><br>['wɔːtəpruːf]<br>n. 雨衣<br>v. 使不透水 | Put on your <b>waterproof</b> coat before you go out in the rain.<br>These hiking shoes have been <b>waterproofed</b> . | 下雨外出前,穿上你的雨衣。<br>这些便鞋防水。         |
| <b>worsen</b> ['wɜːsn]<br>v. 使变坏                       | The rain <b>worsened</b> our difficulties.                                                                              | 雨使我们的处境变得更糟。                     |

**Exercise 7.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The prisoner asked the judge to \_\_\_\_\_ his life.
2. The political situation of the country has \_\_\_\_\_ since its independence.
3. A billion dollars is a \_\_\_\_\_ amount of money.
4. Many thieves were caught and brought to \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the government is required to overcome the present hardship.

**【解答】** 1. spare 2. worsened 3. vast 4. trial 5. stability

### 成果测验

**Exercise 7.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

- D 1. (A) live (B) inhabit (C) dwell (D) reject

- \_\_\_ 2. (A) display (B) ~~discourage~~ (C) show (D) reveal
- \_\_\_ 3. (A) defeat (B) consent (C) agree (D) assent
- \_\_\_ 4. (A) compel (B) force (C) impel (D) reject
- \_\_\_ 5. (A) vast (B) immense (C) stable (D) huge
- \_\_\_ 6. (A) pledge (B) promise (C) preserve (D) vow
- \_\_\_ 7. (A) energetic (B) swift (C) active (D) vigorous
- \_\_\_ 8. (A) job (B) task (C) assignment (D) bureau
- \_\_\_ 9. (A) extent (B) range (C) burial (D) scope
- \_\_\_ 10. (A) raw (B) solemn (C) sacred (D) holy

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. C 10. A

**Exercise 7.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_ 1. 小仙女  
(A) twilight (B) charm (C) fairy (D) squirrel
- \_\_\_ 2. 袖子  
(A) staff (B) sleeve (C) straw (D) slant
- \_\_\_ 3. 外科医生  
(A) surgeon (B) physician (C) suggestion (D) colleague
- \_\_\_ 4. 空暇的  
(A) sour (B) stout (C) spacious (D) spare
- \_\_\_ 5. 使笑  
(A) amuse (B) prosper (C) tap (D) peck

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. A



**Exercise 7.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *profane*

- (A) secular (B) sacred (C) peculiar (D) extreme

\_\_\_ 2. *flee*

- (A) chase (B) discharge (C) lose (D) vanish

\_\_\_ 3. *exempt*

- (A) retire (B) notify (C) involve (D) faint

\_\_\_ 4. *advance*

- (A) ensure (B) retreat (C) affect (D) reveal

\_\_\_ 5. *tiny*

- (A) vast (B) witty (C) dumb (D) dim

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A

**Exercise 7.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词, 每一个代表一个字母:

1. The air is a fluid but not a l \_ \_ \_ \_ d. (液体)

2. The b \_ \_ \_ \_ l ceremony of the late President was held yesterday.  
(葬礼)

3. Please r \_ \_ \_ \_ d me to take my medicine in the morning. (提醒)

4. Don't try to f \_ \_ \_ \_ r her with praises. (奉承)

5. I only caught a g \_ \_ \_ \_ e of the parcel, so I can't guess what was inside it. (一瞥)

**【解答】** 1. liquid 2. burial 3. remind 4. flatter 5. glimpse

**Exercise 7.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. John likes to have *raw* vegetables.  
(A) soft (B) cheap (C) rotten (D) unripe
- \_\_\_ 2. He *pledged* to marry her when he returned from England.  
(A) devised (B) denied (C) vowed (D) flattered
- \_\_\_ 3. Our soldiers *displayed* no fear under the enemy's fire.  
(A) revealed (B) vanquished (C) discharged (D) informed
- \_\_\_ 4. This year's wheat *harvest* was very small because of bad weather.  
(A) peasant (B) crop (C) deposit (D) bunch
- \_\_\_ 5. We will *notify* you when the books arrive.  
(A) inform (B) reveal (C) request (D) guess
- \_\_\_ 6. When I asked him a question, the old man *peered* at me over his glasses.  
(A) pecked (B) stared (C) screamed (D) scratched
- \_\_\_ 7. The soldiers stood beside their horses, waiting for the order to *mount*.  
(A) relieve (B) run (C) dismiss (D) climb
- \_\_\_ 8. Seeing the big dog, the boys *retreated* rapidly.  
(A) advanced (B) screamed (C) withdrew (D) vanished
- \_\_\_ 9. He gave the machine another *trial* to see if it would work.  
(A) motion (B) testing (C) pressure (D) flame
- \_\_\_ 10. Jane's *task* is to set the table.  
(A) assignment (B) distress (C) tide (D) rust

**【解答】** 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. A

## LESSON 8

## 预备测验

◎ 选出最适当的答案：

- The *lame* boy could not \_\_\_\_\_ fast.  
(A) speak (B) walk
- A \_\_\_\_\_ lowered the *anchor* easily.  
(A) sailor (B) surgeon
- The whole nation *mourned* the \_\_\_\_\_ of the much-loved king.  
(A) birth (B) death
- He *pretended* to like the meal so that he \_\_\_\_\_ offend his wife.  
(A) wouldn't (B) would
- The little girl was so \_\_\_\_\_ that she *blushed* every time she was spoken to.  
(A) vigorous (B) shy

△ 解答 △  
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

- accomplish** [ə'kɒmplɪʃ] How many years did it take 你为达到目的花费  
v. 达到 to **accomplish** your purpose? 了多少年?  
n. accomplishment
- anchor** ['æŋkə] The **anchor** caught in the 锚钩住湖底的泥  
n. 锚 mud of the lake bottom and 巴,使船不致移动。  
kept the boat from moving.
- awaken** [ə'weɪkən] The sun was shining when I 我今早醒来时,太  
v. 醒 **awakened** this morning. 阳正闪耀着。  
同 awake

|                                                              |                                                                              |                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>blush</b> [blʌʃ]<br>v. 脸红                                 | She <b>blushed</b> as red as a rose with shame.                              | 她羞愧得脸像玫瑰一般红。        |
| <b>bush</b> [bʊʃ]<br>n. 灌木                                   | He came out of the shadow of the <b>bush</b> and blinked in the sun.         | 他从灌木荫下出来,在阳光下眨着眼。   |
| <b>cheat</b> [tʃi:t]<br>v. 欺骗<br>回 deceive                   | The boy doesn't study hard, and he always <b>cheats</b> in examinations.     | 那男孩子不用功,总是在考试时作弊。   |
| <b>compete</b> [kəm'pi:t]<br>v. 竞争<br>n. competition         | The rival schools <b>competed</b> for the football trophy.                   | 各参赛学校为足球奖而竞争。       |
| <b>consequence</b> n. 结果<br>['kɒnsɪkwəns]<br>adj. consequent | He fell ill and the <b>consequence</b> was that he lost his position.        | 他生病的结果是失了业。         |
| <b>courage</b> ['kʌrɪdʒ]<br>n. 勇气<br>adj. courageous         | <b>Courage</b> is the ability to control fear, not the absence of fear.      | 勇气是指克制恐惧的能力,而非全然无惧。 |
| <b>debate</b> [di'beɪt]<br>v. 讨论<br>回 discuss, argue         | The question of whether war can be abolished has often been <b>debated</b> . | 战争能否废止的问题常被讨论。      |

**Exercise 8.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ the old woman by making her sign a paper she didn't understand.
2. The man was highly praised for having the \_\_\_\_\_ to go into the burning house to save the little girl.
3. We were \_\_\_\_\_ whether to go to the mountain or to the seaside for our summer holidays.
4. The horse was \_\_\_\_\_ against many fine horses for the first prize.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the heavy rain was the flooding of large areas of land.

【解答】 1. cheated 2. courage 3. debating 4. competing  
5. consequence

《第二部分》

|                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>descend</b> [di'send]<br>v. 下降<br>同 ascend                              | The sun slowly <b>descended</b> over the western hills.                                                                                                         | 太阳慢慢落于西山。                                      |
| <b>dispose</b> [dis'pouz]<br>v. 1. 布署<br>2. 处理                             | The general <b>disposed</b> soldiers for the coming battle.<br><br>You 'd better <b>dispose</b> of rubbish before you go out.                                   | 将军为即将来临的战役布署士兵。<br><br>在你外出前,最好收拾一下垃圾。         |
| <b>earnest</b> ['ə:nɪst]<br>adj. 真心的                                       | He made an <b>earnest</b> attempt to persuade her.                                                                                                              | 他真心想说服她。                                       |
| <b>enforce</b> [ɪn'fɔ:s]<br>v. 执行<br>n. enforcement                        | Policemen and judges will <b>enforce</b> the laws of the city.                                                                                                  | 警察和法官将执行都市法规。                                  |
| <b>extend</b> [ɪks'tend]<br>v. 1. 伸出<br>2. 扩展<br>同 enlarge<br>n. extension | He refused to take the hand I <b>extended</b> in friendship.<br><br>An imperialistic country <b>extends</b> its power and influence into neighboring countries. | 他拒绝握我那基于友善而伸出的手。<br><br>帝国主义国家将它的势力和影响扩展至邻近国家。 |
| <b>faithful</b> ['feɪθfʊl]<br>adj. 忠实的                                     | Dogs are always <b>faithful</b> to their masters.                                                                                                               | 狗总是对它们的主人忠实。                                   |
| <b>flavor</b> ['fleɪvə],<br>n. 味道<br>同 taste                               | Chocolate and vanilla have different <b>flavors</b> .                                                                                                           | 巧克力和香草精的味道不同。                                  |
| <b>frustrate</b> [frʌs'treɪt]<br>v. 使受挫                                    | His indifference <b>frustrated</b> the teacher's effort.                                                                                                        | 他的漠不关心使老师的努力受挫。                                |

|                                                     |                                                                          |                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>glorious</b> ['glɔ:riəs]<br>adj. 光荣的<br>n. glory | A <b>glorious</b> victory could be attained only by effort and patience. | 光荣的胜利只有靠努力和耐力才能获得。 |
| <b>haste</b> [heɪst]<br>n. 急忙<br>adj. hasty         | Make <b>haste</b> or you will miss the train again.                      | 快一点, 否则你又会错过那一班火车。 |

**Exercise 8.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. All his \_\_\_\_\_ was of no use; he missed the last train.
2. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ behind the hills and it was dark everywhere.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ student tried very hard to do his best.
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ friend is reliable and can be depended on to do his work.
5. The bad weather \_\_\_\_\_ our plan to a picnic.

**【解答】** 1. haste 2. descended 3. earnest 4. faithful 5. frustrated

### 《第三部分》

|                                                             |                                                                                       |                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>identify</b> [ai'dentɪfaɪ]<br>v. 认出<br>n. identification | Can you <b>identify</b> a composer by listening to his music?                         | 你能听音乐就认出作曲家吗?         |
| <b>injure</b> ['ɪndʒə]<br>v. 伤害<br>同 harm                   | She was <b>injured</b> badly in the car accident yesterday.                           | 她在昨天的车祸中受重伤。          |
| <b>irregular</b> [i'regjulə]<br>adj. 不规则的<br>同 unusual      | Train schedules were <b>irregular</b> during the flood.                               | 水灾期间, 火车班次不规则。        |
| <b>lame</b> [leɪm]<br>adj. 跛足的<br>同 crippled                | The soldier is not able to walk normally because he is <b>lame</b> from an old wound. | 那士兵因旧伤而跛足, 使他无法正常地行走。 |

|                                                                |                                                                                            |                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>liquor</b> ['likə]<br>n. 酒类                                 | Does this restaurant have a license to serve <b>liquor</b> ?                               | 这家餐厅有卖酒的执照吗?                         |
| <b>manly</b> ['mænli]<br>adj. 有男子气概的<br>☐ womanly,<br>womanish | My aunt was a lady of strong mind and great resolution, she was a very <b>manly</b> woman. | 我的叔母是位意志坚强, 有坚决果断力的女士, 她是一个有男子气概的女人。 |
| <b>mild</b> [maɪld]<br>adj. 轻的, 温和的<br>☐ gentle, kind          | The thief was given a <b>milder</b> punishment than he deserved.                           | 那小偷受到的惩罚比他应得的轻。                      |
| <b>mourn</b> [mə:n]<br>v. 哀悼                                   | All the people <b>mourned</b> the loss of their President.                                 | 所有的人都为总统的去世哀悼。                       |
| <b>notion</b> ['nouʃən]<br>n. 想法                               | Your head is full of silly <b>no-tions</b> .                                               | 你脑子里充满愚蠢的想法。                         |
| <b>order</b> ['ɔ:də]<br>n. v. 命令                               | He gave <b>orders</b> that the work should be done at once.                                | 他下命令, 工作应该立刻进行。                      |

**Exercise 8.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. John could easily \_\_\_\_\_ his own son among many boys.
2. A soldier who doesn't obey \_\_\_\_\_ will be in serious trouble.
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ his leg when he fell over the big stone.
4. It was her \_\_\_\_\_ that planes were safer than trains.
5. He was \_\_\_\_\_ over the loss of his best friend.

**【解答】** 1. identify 2. orders 3. injured 4. notion 5. mourning

#### 《第四部分》

**paragraph** ['pærəgrɑ:f] A new **paragraph** always be- 新的一段总是换行  
n. (文章的)段;节 gins on a new line. 开始。

|                                                                  |                                                                                                                            |                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>penalty</b> ['penlti]<br>n. 刑罚                                | The <b>penalty</b> for his offense was five years in prison.                                                               | 他犯罪的刑罚是监禁五年。                                 |
| <b>pluck</b> [plʌk]<br>v. 采; 摘                                   | Do not <b>pluck</b> the flower in the garden, please.                                                                      | 请勿摘折花园里的花。                                   |
| <b>pretend</b> [pri'tend]<br>v. 假装<br>n. pretence                | He <b>pretended</b> to be asleep when his mother called him.                                                               | 他母亲叫他时, 他假装睡着。                               |
| <b>protect</b> [prə'tekt]<br>v. 保护<br>n. protection              | We keep our army to <b>protect</b> our country from the enemy.                                                             | 我们保持军力, 以保卫国家免受敌人侵犯。                         |
| <b>realize</b> ['riəlaiz]<br>v. 1. 了解<br>2. 实现<br>n. realization | He didn't <b>realize</b> how it was until he went outside.<br><br>He <b>realized</b> his dreams when he became a doctor.   | 直到他走到外头, 才了解到天气有多冷。<br><br>当他成为医生时, 实现了他的梦想。 |
| <b>remove</b> [ri'mu:v]<br>v. 1. 迁移; 移开<br>2. 除去<br>同 eliminate  | Our office has <b>removed</b> from New York to Chicago.<br><br>She could not <b>remove</b> the spot from the carpet.       | 我们的办公室已从纽约迁移到芝加哥。<br><br>她无法除去地毯上污斑。         |
| <b>reveal</b> [ri'vi:l]<br>v. 泄露<br>n. revelation                | Can you promise never to <b>reveal</b> my secret?                                                                          | 你能答应永远不泄露我的秘密吗?                              |
| <b>sacrifice</b> ['sækrifais]<br>v. 牺牲<br>n. 牺牲                  | A mother will <b>sacrifice</b> her life for her children.<br><br>Success is not worth the <b>sacrifice</b> of your health. | 母亲会为她的孩子牺牲生命。<br><br>成功不值得你牺牲你的健康。           |
| <b>screw</b> [skru:]<br>n. 螺丝钉<br>v. 用螺丝钉钉往                      | Turn the <b>screw</b> to the right to tighten it.<br><br>The carpenter <b>screwed</b> a lock on the door.                  | 将螺丝钉向右旋转扭紧它。<br><br>木匠用螺丝钉将锁钉在门上。            |



**Exercise 8.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. She suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that she was not married.
2. Please \_\_\_\_\_ mud from your shoes before you get into the hall.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ her dream of becoming an actress.
4. He raised his arm in order to \_\_\_\_\_ his face from the blow.
5. She wasn't really crying; she was only \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. revealed 2. remove 3. realized 4. protect 5. pretending

《第五部分》

|                                                   |                                                                      |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>shell</b> [ʃel]<br>n. 壳<br>同 core              | The cock broke the <b>shell</b> of an egg.                           | 厨子将蛋壳打破。         |
| <b>slender</b> ['slendə]<br>adj. 苗条的              | She is a very <b>slender</b> blonde.                                 | 她是个非常苗条的金发女郎。    |
| <b>sparkle</b> ['spɑ:kəl]<br>v. 闪耀                | The lake <b>sparkled</b> in the sunshine.                            | 湖水在阳光下闪闪发光。      |
| <b>stain</b> [stein]<br>n. 污点<br>同 spots<br>v. 受污 | He has ink <b>stains</b> on his shirt.                               | 他的衬衫上有墨水污点。      |
|                                                   | The tablecloth is <b>stained</b> where food has been spilled.        | 在食物洒出的地方,桌布被弄脏了。 |
| <b>stream</b> [stri:m]<br>n. 河;溪                  | They walked along the bank of the <b>stream</b> .                    | 他们沿着河岸走。         |
| <b>surrender</b> (sə'rendə)<br>n. 投降<br>同 yield   | We advised the bandits to <b>surrender</b> themselves to the police. | 我们劝强盗向警方自首。      |

|                                                                 |                                                                                                                     |                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>tasty</b> ['teisti]<br><i>adj.</i> 美味的<br><i>n.</i> taste    | All of us have a <i>tasty</i> meal yesterday.                                                                       | 我们昨天都享受了顿美味的饭食。                   |
| <b>tight</b> [taɪt]<br><i>adj.</i> 紧的<br><i>v.</i> tighten      | The drawer is so <i>tight</i> that I can't open it.                                                                 | 抽屉太紧,我打不开。                        |
| <b>tribe</b> [traɪb]<br><i>n.</i> 部落                            | America was once the home of many Indian <i>tribes</i> .                                                            | 美洲一度曾是许多印第安部落的家。                  |
| <b>weapon</b> ['wepən]<br><i>n.</i> 武器                          | The soldiers were cleaning their <i>weapons</i> .                                                                   | 士兵们在擦拭他们的武器。                      |
| <b>wreck</b> [rek]<br><i>v.</i> 拆毁<br>同 destroy<br><i>n.</i> 残骸 | The building was <i>wrecked</i> because it was unsafe.<br><br>The <i>wreck</i> of the ship was reported last night. | 这栋建筑因为不安全被拆毁。<br><br>船只的残骸于昨晚被发现。 |

**Exercise 8.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. There were blood \_\_\_\_\_ at the scene of the murder.
2. We will never \_\_\_\_\_ to the enemy.
3. Pack the cases as \_\_\_\_\_ as possible.
4. Guns are of little value against modern \_\_\_\_\_ in war.
5. Most girls want to be \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. stains 2. surrender 3. tight 4. weapons 5. slender

### 成果测验

**Exercise 8.6** 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词:

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. a *slender* girl

(A) thin (B) faint (C) tiny (D) small

- \_\_\_ 2. a sweet *flavor*  
 (A) blossom (B) flower (C) taste (D) pledge
- \_\_\_ 3. to *compete* for prize  
 (A) spare (B) contend (C) impel (D) amuse
- \_\_\_ 4. to *surrender* unconditionally  
 (A) conquer (B) love (C) escape (D) yield
- \_\_\_ 5. to *identify* the coat at once  
 (A) notify (B) display (C) disclose (D) recognize
- \_\_\_ 6. to be *frustrated* by rain  
 (A) cheated (B) disappointed (C) removed (D) compelled
- \_\_\_ 7. to *injure* one's feeling  
 (A) harm (B) control (C) reveal (D) flatter
- \_\_\_ 8. the *consequence* of war  
 (A) escape (B) outcome (C) trial (D) prospect
- \_\_\_ 9. an *earnest* man  
 (A) sincere (B) rich (C) strong (D) unusual
- \_\_\_ 10. to *reveal* secrets  
 (A) identify (B) conceal (C) disclose (D) inform

**【解答】** 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. D 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. C

**Exercise 8.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_ 1. 污点  
 (A) clan (B) veil (C) stain (D) blush
- \_\_\_ 2. 牺牲  
 (A) sacrifice (B) stare (C) deserve (D) derive

\_\_\_ 3. 处理

(A) compete (B) ~~dispose~~ (C) perform (D) worsen

\_\_\_ 4. 实现

(A) identify (B) awaken (C) realize (D) stretch

\_\_\_ 5. 残骸

(A) woe (B) screw (C) shell (D) wreck

**【解答】** 1. C    2. A    3. B    4. C    5. D

**Exercise 8.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词：

\_\_\_ 1. *courage*

(A) punishment (B) cowardice (C) injury (D) instability

\_\_\_ 2. *conceal*

(A) avoid (B) debate (C) deceive (D) reveal

\_\_\_ 3. *consequence*

(A) haste (B) result (C) cause (D) conscience

\_\_\_ 4. *insincere*

(A) faithful (B) mighty (C) extensive (D) profane

\_\_\_ 5. *ascend*

(A) frustrate (B) descend (C) protect (D) debate

**【解答】** 1. B    2. D    3. C    4. A    5. B

**Exercise 8.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词，每一格代表一个字母：

1. For the moment he didn't r            e his eyes from the face of the little girl. (移开)

2. Many children were swimming in the s            m. (溪)

3. She saw the diamonds s \_ \_ \_ \_ e in the bright light. (闪耀)
4. He has too m \_ \_ d a nature to get angry, even if he has good cause.  
(温和的)
5. It took three years to a \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ h his ambition. (达到)

**【解答】** 1. remove      2. stream      3. sparkle      4. mild  
5. accomplish

**Exercise 8.10** 选出最适合句意的一个单词:

1. In his attempt to escape, the prisoner was \_\_\_\_\_ by a watchful guard.  
(A) amused (B) frustrated (C) wrecked (D) plucked
2. Government makes laws and the police \_\_\_\_\_ them.  
(A) enforce (B) stretch (C) dispose (D) chase
3. The city \_\_\_\_\_ the road to the next town.  
(A) yielded (B) guarded (C) disposed (D) extended
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ friend keeps his promises.  
(A) solemn (B) splendid (C) faithful (D) lame
5. The sick man's heartbeat was \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) irregular (B) raw (C) spare (D) tiny

**【解答】** 1. B      2. A      3. D      4. C      5. A

**Exercise 8.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当词性,填入空格中:

1. *haste*      His \_\_\_\_\_ decisions caused many mistakes.
2. *frustrate*      Life is full of \_\_\_\_\_ for most people.
3. *accomplish*      She is known for her \_\_\_\_\_ in improving the country's

hospitals.

4. *pretend* He often uses my car without my permission under the \_\_\_\_\_ of friendship.

5. *courage* It was \_\_\_\_\_ of you to try and save the drowning man.

**【解答】** 1. haste      2. frustration      3. accomplishment  
4. pretence      5. courageous

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 9

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

1. When a man is *innocent*, he is \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) ignorant (B) guiltless
2. He *boasts* that he is the \_\_\_\_\_ billiard player in the town.  
(A) best (B) worst
3. A *peninsula* is surrounded on three sides by \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) islands (B) water
4. The person whose work is \_\_\_\_\_ animals for food is called a *butcher*.  
(A) killing (B) protecting
5. The man put a *saddle* on the \_\_\_\_\_ and ran away.  
(A) horse (B) bicycle

△ 解答 △  
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. A

## 《第一部分》

✓ **accord** [ə'kɔ:d]

v. 符合

同 concur 反 discord

What you have just said does not **accord** with what you told us yesterday.

你刚才说的和你昨天告诉我们的不符。

✓ **award** [ə'wɔ:d]

v. 授予

He was **awarded** the first prize in the speech contest.

他在演讲比赛中被授予首奖。

✓ **boast** [bəʊst]

v. 夸耀

He **boasted** about the big fish he had caught.

他夸耀他抓到的大鱼。

**butcher** ['bʊtʃə]

n. 肉店; 屠夫

You can buy meat at the **butcher's** shop.

你可以在肉店买肉。

**cheek**[tʃi:k]*n.* 颊Her **cheeks** went red after she broke the window.

她打破窗子后,满脸通红。

**competent**['kɒmpitənt]*adj.* 1. 胜任的He is not **competent** enough to do the job.

他无法胜任那件工作。

2. 充分的

Before you can be a lawyer, you must have a **competent** knowledge of the law.

在你成为律师前,必须具有充分的法律知识。

**consist**[kən'sist]*v.* 1. 组成同 *comprise*The United Kingdom **consists** of Great Britain and the Northern Ireland.

联合王国是由大不列颠和北爱尔兰所组成。

2. 存在

Happiness **consists** in contentment.

幸福在于知足。

**crack**[kræk]*n.* 裂缝同 *crevice*There is a **crack** in the ice. Don't skate around here.

冰上有道裂缝,不要在这附近溜冰。

**debt**[det]*n.* 债务He was in **debt** when he was poor, but has been out of **debt** since he got rich.

他贫穷时负债,可是自从他有钱后,已经还清了债务。

**describe**[dis'kraib]*v.* 描述*n.* descriptionThe reporter **described** the accident in detail.

记者详尽地描述那意外事件。

**Exercise 9.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. I owe him a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of gratitude of all he has done to help me.
2. His account of the accident seems to \_\_\_\_\_ with yours.
3. It is unpleasant to hear one \_\_\_\_\_ about his own abilities, achievements, possessions.
4. His horse was \_\_\_\_\_ the highest prize at the horse-show.
5. Happiness \_\_\_\_\_ largely in being easily pleased or satisfied.



【解答】 1. debt 2. accord 3. boast 4. awarded 5. consists

《第二部分》

|                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                             |                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>dispute</b> [dis'pju:t]<br>v. 争论                                | They <b>disputed</b> for hours where to go for their picnic.                                                                                                | 他们为去哪里野餐争论了好几个小时。                       |
| <b>ease</b> [i:z]<br>n. 轻松<br>adj. easy                            | The soldiers marched twenty miles with <b>ease</b> .                                                                                                        | 士兵们轻易地前进了二十哩。                           |
| <b>engage</b> [in'geɪdʒ]<br>v. 1. 雇用<br><br>2. 忙于<br>n. engagement | She <b>engaged</b> a carpenter to repair the sofa and the table.<br><br>The old lady <b>engaged</b> herself in making clothes for her neighbour's children. | 她雇一个木匠来修理沙发和桌子。<br><br>那老妇人忙于为邻家的孩子做衣服。 |
| <b>express</b> [iks'pres]<br>v. 表达<br>n. expression                | He is still unable to <b>express</b> himself in English.                                                                                                    | 他仍然无法用英语表达自己的意思。                        |
| <b>fancy</b> ['fænsi]<br>n. 想像力<br>adj. fanciful                   | By the power of <b>fancy</b> , we may create an unreal world.                                                                                               | 借着想像力,我们可以创造一个虚幻不实的世界。                  |
| <b>flee</b> [fli:]<br>v. 逃跑<br>同 fly, escape                       | The enemy were defeated and <b>fled</b> in disorder.                                                                                                        | 敌军溃败而逃。                                 |
| <b>fulfil</b> (1)[ful'fil]<br>v. 实践                                | If you make a promise, you should <b>fulfil</b> it.                                                                                                         | 如果你许下诺言,就应该实践它。                         |
| <b>grace</b> [greɪs]<br>n. 优雅                                      | The ballet dancer danced with much <b>grace</b> .                                                                                                           | 那芭蕾舞演员的舞步极为优雅。                          |
| <b>haunt</b> [hɔ:nt]<br>v. (鬼)出没                                   | People say that the old house is <b>haunted</b> by a ghost.                                                                                                 | 据说那栋旧宅里有鬼出没。                            |

**innocent** ['ɪnəsnt] Is he guilty or *innocent* of the crime? 他是有罪还是无罪?  
*adj.* 无罪的

**Exercise 9.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The robbers tried to \_\_\_\_\_ but they were caught soon.
2. The old woman \_\_\_\_\_ a maid servant to clean her house.
3. His speech was full of \_\_\_\_\_ and wit.
4. A nurse has many duties to \_\_\_\_\_ in caring for the sick.
5. They were still \_\_\_\_\_ the rights and wrongs of the case at midnight.

【解答】 1. flee 2. engaged 3. grace 4. fulfil 5. disputing

### 第三部分

|                                                                 |                                                                         |                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>issue</b> ['ɪsjuː, 'ɪʃjuː]<br>v. 1. 发行                       | The government <i>issues</i> money and stamps.                          | 政府发行钞票和邮票。      |
| 2. 出版<br>同 publish                                              | This book was <i>issued</i> in New York in 1972.                        | 这本书于一九七二年在纽约出版。 |
| 3. 流出                                                           | A lot of blood was <i>issuing</i> from the wound.                       | 大量的血正从伤口流出。     |
| <b>landlord</b> ['lændlə:d]<br>n. 房东                            | The <i>landlord</i> put a new stove in my room.                         | 房东在我房间里放了一个新暖炉。 |
| <b>literature</b> ['lɪtərɪtʃə]<br>n. 文学<br><i>adj.</i> literary | Many foreigners are studying Chinese <i>literature</i> .                | 许多外国人正在学习中国文学。  |
| <b>manufacture</b><br>[ˌmænjʊ'fæktʃə]<br>n. 制造                  | The <i>manufacture</i> of watches is the chief business of Switzerland. | 钟表制造是瑞士主要的行业。   |

|                                                               |                                                                                                  |                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| v. 制造<br>回 make, produce                                      | The factory <b>manufactures</b> automobiles in large quantity by using machines.                 | 该工厂使用机器制造大量的汽车。               |
| <b>military</b> ['militəri]<br>n. 军队<br>回 civilian            | In some countries every healthy young man must do 2 or 3 years' <b>military</b> service.         | 在某些国家, 所有年轻力壮的男子都必须服两年或三年的兵役。 |
| <b>multiply</b> ['mʌltiplai]<br>v. 增加                         | The population of the city is <b>multiplying</b> rapidly.                                        | 该市人口正迅速地增加。                   |
| <b>numerous</b> ['nju:mərəs]<br>adj. 极多的                      | Children often asked <b>numerous</b> questions about the universe.                               | 孩子们经常问许多有关宇宙的问题。              |
| <b>ordinary</b> ['ɔ:diənəri]<br>adj. 通常的<br>回 common          | His <b>ordinary</b> lunch consists of soup, a sandwich and milk.                                 | 他平常的午餐包括汤, 一个三明治还有牛奶。         |
| <b>pardon</b> ['pɑ:dn]<br>n. 原谅<br>v. 原谅<br>回 excuse, forgive | I beg your <b>pardon</b> for being late.<br><br>We must <b>pardon</b> him for his little faults. | 请你原谅我迟到。<br><br>我们必须原谅他的小错。   |
| <b>peninsula</b> [pi'ninsjulə]<br>n. 半岛                       | Spain of Italy is a <b>peninsula</b> .                                                           | 西班牙或意大利都是个半岛。                 |

**Exercise 9.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The chimney \_\_\_\_\_ smoke from the fireplace.
2. As we climbed up the mountain the dangers and difficulties \_\_\_\_\_.
3. At night we can see \_\_\_\_\_ stars in the sky.
4. Shakespeare is a great name in English \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I beg your \_\_\_\_\_, but I didn't hear you.

**【解答】** 1. issues 2. multiplied 3. numerous 4. literature 5. pardon

## 《第四部分》

|                                                |                                                                                                                                         |                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>plunge</b> [plʌndʒ]<br>v. 跳入                | He <b>plunged</b> into the river and saved the boy.                                                                                     | 他跳入河中救起那男孩。                                        |
| <b>prevent</b> [pri'vent]<br>v. 阻碍             | A heavy rain <b>prevented</b> us from going on a picnic.                                                                                | 大雨使我们不能去野餐。                                        |
| <b>protest</b> [prə'test]<br>v. 反对<br>同 object | Most of them <b>protested</b> against the new heavy tax.                                                                                | 他们大多数反对新的重税。                                       |
| <b>rear</b> [riə]<br>n. 后面<br>同 back 同 front   | The people in the <b>rear</b> of the room couldn't hear the speaker.                                                                    | 房间后头的人听不到演说者的声音。                                   |
| <b>rent</b> [rent]<br>n. 租金<br><br>v. 租        | <b>Rent</b> for that three-bedroom apartment is \$ 500 a month.<br><br>We don't own our house, we <b>rent</b> it from Mr. Gay.          | 这栋有三间卧室的公寓, 每月租金五百元。<br><br>我们住的房子不是自己的, 是向盖伊先生租的。 |
| <b>revenge</b> [ri'vendʒ]<br>n. 复仇             | His mind was filled with <b>revenge</b> .                                                                                               | 他心中充满复仇之意。                                         |
| <b>saddle</b> ['sædl]<br>n. 马鞍                 | It is difficult to ride a horse without a <b>saddle</b> .                                                                               | 没有马鞍骑马很困难。                                         |
| <b>seal</b> [si:l]<br>n. 封印<br><br>v. 盖章       | The paper had been stamped with the required official <b>seal</b> .<br><br>The treaty was signed and <b>sealed</b> by both governments. | 这份文件已印有必需的官府封印。<br><br>两国政府都在条约上签字盖章。              |
| <b>shelter</b> ['ʃeltə]<br>n. 避难所<br>同 refuge  | The cave provided a good <b>shelter</b> for the ancient people.                                                                         | 洞穴为古人提供了一个良好的避难所。                                  |

*v.* 遮蔽      The abandoned car **sheltered** them from the rain.      那部被丢弃的车子供他们躲雨。

**slice** [slais]  
*n.* 片      He ate two **slices** of bread for his breakfast.      他早餐吃了两片面包。

**Exercise 9.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ for the house was more than they could afford.
2. The garage is usually at the \_\_\_\_\_ of a house.
3. There was a large crowd in the street, \_\_\_\_\_ against the war.
4. Illness \_\_\_\_\_ him from taking the examination.
5. The fireman \_\_\_\_\_ into the burning house to rescue the baby in it.

【解答】 1. rent 2. rear 3. protesting 4. prevented 5. plunged

### 《第五部分》

**spear** [spiə]  
*n.* 矛; 鱼叉      In Africa **spears** are still used in hunting or fishing.      在非洲矛和鱼叉仍然被用来打猎或捕鱼

**stake** [steik]  
*n.* 1. 木桩      **Stakes** mark the boundary of his ranch.      木桩用来标出他农场的范围。

2. 利害关系      As a partner, he has a **stake** in that business.      身为一个股东,他和那业务有利害关系。

*v.* 赌      He **staked** all his money on the black horse.      他将所有的钱赌在那匹黑马上。

**stretch** [stretʃ]  
*v.* 伸出      The beggar **stretched** out his hand for the money.      那乞丐伸出手要钱。  
同 extend

|                                                       |                                                                                                                 |                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>surround</b> [sə'raund]<br>v. 包围<br>n. surrounding | The field is <b>surrounded</b> by a high fence.                                                                 | 那块田被高篱所围。                       |
| <b>tavern</b> ['tævn(;)n]<br>n. 酒店;旅店                 | They met at the <b>tavern</b> for a drink.                                                                      | 他们为喝酒在酒店里见面。                    |
| <b>timber</b> ['timbə]<br>n. 森林;木材<br>同 lumber        | The fire destroyed thousands of acres of <b>timber</b> .                                                        | 火烧毁了数千英亩的森林。                    |
| <b>trick</b> [trik]<br>n. 戏法<br><br>v. 欺骗<br>同 cheat  | The <b>tricks</b> of the magician delighted the children.<br><br>We were <b>tricked</b> into buying a poor car. | 魔术师的戏法使孩子们高兴。<br><br>我们被骗买一部破车。 |
| <b>vein</b> [vein]<br>n. 静脉<br>同 artery               | Blood poured from the cut <b>vein</b> .                                                                         | 血从割开的静脉中流出。                     |
| <b>weaken</b> ['wi:kən]<br>v. 使弱<br>adj. weak         | The illness <b>weakened</b> her heart.                                                                          | 她的病使得她的心脏衰弱。                    |
| <b>wring</b> [rin]<br>v. 扭;绞<br>同 twist               | I'll <b>wring</b> your neck if you don't behave well.                                                           | 如果你表现不好,我会扭断你的脖子。               |

**Exercise 9.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The bird \_\_\_\_\_ its wings when it wants to fly.
2. The soldiers \_\_\_\_\_ the enemies in the town.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ carried the blood to the heart from all part of the body.
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ as her illness grew worse.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the water from your bathing suit.

**【解答】** 1. stretches 2. surrounded 3. vein 4. weakened 5. Wring

### 成果测验

**Exercise 9.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词：

- \_\_\_1. (A) accomplish (B) perform (C) stretch (D) fulfil
- \_\_\_2. (A) make (B) manufacture (C) produce (D) wring
- \_\_\_3. (A) defeat (B) express (C) reveal (D) represent
- \_\_\_4. (A) twist (B) squeeze (C) yield (D) wring
- \_\_\_5. (A) protection (B) revenge (C) refuge (D) shelter
- \_\_\_6. (A) many (B) plentiful (C) numerous (D) extensive
- \_\_\_7. (A) concur (B) harmonize (C) achieve (D) accord
- \_\_\_8. (A) flee (B) fly (C) escape (D) chase
- \_\_\_9. (A) ordinary (B) useful (C) common (D) average
- \_\_\_10. (A) landlord (B) host (C) rent (D) innkeeper

**【解答】** 1. C 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. C

**Exercise 9.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_1. 优雅  
(A) reverse (B) grace (C) blush (D) clean
- \_\_\_2. 扭

- (A) wing (B) ring (C) wring (D) seal
- \_\_\_ 3. 出没  
(A) haunt (B) flee (C) multiply (D) enclose
- \_\_\_ 4. 伸出  
(A) pretend (B) fulfil (C) spare (C) stretch
- \_\_\_ 5. 戏法  
(A) seal (B) trick (C) screw (D) stain

**【解答】** 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B

**Exercise 9.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. *chase*  
(A) assume (B) flee (C) wreck (D) conceal
- \_\_\_ 2. *artery*  
(A) vein (B) veil (C) manufacture (D) literature
- \_\_\_ 3. *front*  
(A) revenge (B) opposite (C) sleeve (D) rear
- \_\_\_ 4. *discord*  
(A) baffle (B) mourn (C) haunt (D) harmonize
- \_\_\_ 5. *dismiss*  
(A) discharge (B) engage (C) disclose (D) find

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. D 5. B



**Exercise 9.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. Hamlet wanted r            e for his father's murder. (复仇)
2. He found a room for the night at a t            n. (旅店)
3. His peaceful words and violent actions do not a            d. (符合)
4. What kind of t            r was used for the frame of the house? (木材)
5. You can w            n tea by adding water. (使弱)

**【解答】** 1. revenge 2. tavern 3. accord 4. timber 5. weaken

**Exercise 9.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. He threw the mirror on the floor, but there was not a *crack* in it.  
(A) sound (B) crevice (C) stake (D) trick
- \_\_\_ 2. That magazine is *issued* once a month.  
(A) sold (B) bought (C) published (D) shown
- \_\_\_ 3. If you want to learn German, you must first find a *competent* teacher.  
(A) capable (B) faithful (C) honorable (D) sacred
- \_\_\_ 4. Some husbands and wives are always *disputing*.  
(A) discharging (B) disposing (C) competing (D) arguing
- \_\_\_ 5. Water *consists* of hydrogen and oxygen.  
(A) disposes (B) comprises (C) derives (D) involves
- \_\_\_ 6. The children *protested* loudly when they were told to bed.  
(A) objected (B) protected (C) discorded (D) revenged
- \_\_\_ 7. They *engaged* a man to paint their new house.  
(A) employed (B) forced (C) dismissed (D) pardoned

- \_\_\_ 8. Did I really hear someone come in or was it only a *fancy*?  
 (A) notion (B) flavor (C) grace (D) illusion
- \_\_\_ 9. The old house is *enclosed* with trees.  
 (A) protected (B) prevented (C) disclosed (D) surrounded
- \_\_\_ 10. *Forgive* my mistakes. I'll try not to make the same mistakes.  
 (A) mourn (B) deter (C) pardon (D) forget

**【解答】** 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. D 9. D 10. C

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
 授权海南(三环)出版社在  
 大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 10

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

- The *fleet* has a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)warships (B)cars
- Make *hay* while \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)it is raining (B)the sun shines
- When a person is \_\_\_\_\_, he is *ignorant*.  
(A)guiltless (B)uneducated
- John is guilty of *murder*; he \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)killed someone (B)stole something
- A \_\_\_\_\_ citizen *obeys* the laws of his country.  
(A)good (B)bad

△ 解答 △  
1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A

## 《第一部分》

|                                                  |                                                                |                |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>account</b> [ə'kaunt]<br>n. 叙述                | The boy gave his father an <b>account</b> of the ball game.    | 那男孩向他父亲讲球赛的经过。 |
| <b>angle</b> ['æŋgl]<br>n. 角                     | An <b>angle</b> of 90 degrees is called a right <b>angle</b> . | 九十度的角叫做直角。     |
| <b>aware</b> [ə'weə]<br>adj. 觉察的<br>n. awareness | I was too sleepy to be <b>aware</b> of how cold it was.        | 我太困以致无法觉察出有多冷。 |
| <b>bold</b> [bəʊld]<br>adj. 大胆的<br>☐ cowardly    | Climbing the steep mountain is a <b>bold</b> act.              | 爬那座险峻的山是大胆的行动。 |

|                                                          |                                                                                                   |                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>cabin</b> ['kæbin]<br>n. 小屋                           | The pioneers lived in a <b>cabin</b> in the woods.                                                | 拓荒者住在森林里的一间小屋内。             |
| <b>cheer</b> [tʃiə]<br>v. 使高兴<br>同 acclaim               | Everyone was <b>cheered</b> by the news that peace had come.                                      | 和平到来的消息使每一个人都高兴。            |
| <b>complain</b> [kəm'plein]<br>v. 抱怨<br>n. complaint     | She <b>complained</b> to the police about the barking of her neighbor's dog.                      | 她向警察方抱怨邻家的狗叫声。              |
| <b>consolation</b> n. 安慰<br>[kənsə'leɪʃən]<br>v. console | I got many letters of <b>consolation</b> when my mother died.                                     | 当我母亲去世时, 我收到许多慰问信。          |
| <b>crash</b> [kræʃ]<br>n. 1. 破碎声<br>2. 失事; 坠毁            | The bottle fell on the floor with a <b>crash</b> .<br>He was killed in an aircraft <b>crash</b> . | 瓶子哗啦一声掉到地上。<br>他在一次飞机失事中丧生。 |
| <b>decay</b> [di'keɪ]<br>v. 腐蚀<br>同 decline, rot         | Her teeth <b>decayed</b> because she ate too many sweets.                                         | 她的牙齿因贪吃甜食而蛀坏。               |

**Exercise 10.1:** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- The two roads lie at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of 45 degrees.
- When your teeth begin to \_\_\_\_\_ you should go to see a dentist at once.
- Every time an American runner won a race, the crowd \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are you \_\_\_\_\_ that you are sitting on my hat?
- Please give me a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of everything as it happened.

**【解答】** 1. angle 2. decay 3. cheered 4. aware 5. account

## 《第二部分》

|                                                                       |                                                                                                                               |                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>deserve</b> [di'zə:v]<br>v. 应受                                     | If you do wrong, you <b>deserve</b> severe punishment.                                                                        | 如果你做错事, 应受严厉的处罚。                 |
| <b>distinction</b> n. 区分<br>[dis'tɪŋkʃən]<br>v. distinguish           | She treated all the children alike without <b>distinction</b> .                                                               | 她给孩子们同样的待遇, 没有区分。                |
| <b>echo</b> ['ekou]<br>v. 发回声                                         | Their voice <b>echoed</b> in the big hall.                                                                                    | 他们的声音在大厅里回响着。                    |
| <b>enormous</b> [i'nɔ:məs]<br>adj. 非常大的                               | The war cost an <b>enormous</b> sum of money.                                                                                 | 那场战争消耗大量的金钱。                     |
| <b>expose</b> [iks'pouz]<br>v. 1. 暴露<br>2. 揭穿<br>同 disclose           | Soldiers in an open field are <b>exposed</b> to the enemy's fire.<br>He threatened to <b>expose</b> the secret to the police. | 旷野中的士兵暴露在敌人的炮火下。<br>他威胁要向警方揭穿秘密。 |
| <b>farewell</b> ['fæə'wel]<br>n. 离别                                   | We shall have a <b>farewell</b> party before we leave.                                                                        | 在我们离开前, 将有一次离别宴会。                |
| <b>fleet</b> [fli:t]<br>n. 舰队                                         | The Sixth <b>Fleet</b> in the harbor is moving toward our coast.                                                              | 港中的第六舰队正朝着我们的海岸航行。               |
| <b>function</b> ['fʌŋkʃən]<br>n. 功能<br>adj. functional<br>v. function | The brain performs a very important <b>function</b> ; it controls the nervous system of the body.                             | 脑执行着一项非常重要的功能; 它控制着身体的神经系统。      |
| <b>gradual</b> ['grædʒuəl]<br>adj. 逐渐的                                | A child's growth into an adult is <b>gradual</b> .                                                                            | 儿童到成人的成长过程是逐渐的。                  |
| <b>hay</b> [hei]<br>n. 干草                                             | They usually keep the <b>hay</b> in the barn.                                                                                 | 他们通常将干草存放在谷仓中。                   |

**Exercise 10.2:** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The murderer was hanged; he \_\_\_\_\_ his fate.
2. He gave all his servants the same wages, without making any \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The change was \_\_\_\_\_, but now it looks completely different.
4. The hill \_\_\_\_\_ back the noise of the gun-shot.
5. During the last ten years, he has made a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ amount of money to become a millionaire.

【解答】 1. deserved    2. distinctions    3. gradual    4. echoed  
5. enormous

### 《第三部分》

|                                                                  |                                                                                      |                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>ignorant</b> <i>adj.</i> 无知的<br>[ˈɪgnərənt]                   | He is quite <b>ignorant</b> ; he can't even read or write.                           | 他很无知;他甚至连读或写都不会。      |
| <b>inquire</b> [inˈkwaɪə]<br><i>v.</i> 询问<br><i>n.</i> inquiry   | I <b>inquired</b> of him what he wanted.                                             | 我问他要什么。               |
| <b>item</b> [ˈaɪtəm]<br><i>n.</i> 项目                             | Meat, salad, and potatoes were three of the <b>items</b> on her shopping list.       | 肉,沙拉还有马铃薯是她购物单上的三个项目。 |
| <b>landscape</b> <i>n.</i><br>风景 [ˈlændskeɪp]<br>同 scenery, view | From the church tower, we can overlook the beautiful <b>landscape</b> of the valley. | 从教堂的塔上,我们可以俯瞰山谷美丽的景色。 |
| <b>liver</b> [ˈlɪvə]<br><i>n.</i> 肝脏                             | He was sent to hospital because of his bad <b>liver</b> .                            | 他因肝病被送到医院。            |
| <b>manuscript</b> <i>n.</i> 原稿<br>[ˈmænjuskript]                 | He sent the <b>manuscript</b> to the printer yesterday.                              | 他昨天将原稿送到印刷厂。          |

|                                                |                                                          |                       |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>millionaire</b> [ˌmɪljəˈneə]<br>n. 百万富翁     | The man is a <b>millionaire</b> ; he is a very rich man. | 那人是个百万富翁; 他是一个非常富有的人。 |
| <b>murder</b> [ˈmɜːdə]<br>n. 谋杀                | The man was guilty of <b>murder</b> ; he killed someone. | 那人犯了谋杀罪; 他杀了人。        |
| <b>obey</b> [əˈbeɪ]<br>v. 服从<br>n. obedience   | <b>Obey</b> the law or you will be punished.             | 服从法律, 否则你将会受罚。        |
| <b>organization</b> n. 结构<br>[ˌɔːgənaiˈzeɪʃən] | The human body has a very complex <b>organization</b> .  | 人体有非常复杂的结构。           |

**Exercise 10.3:** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. We could see the beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ of the English Lakes through the train window.
2. An army without \_\_\_\_\_ would be useless.
3. Soldier should \_\_\_\_\_ orders immediately.
4. That \_\_\_\_\_ owns his own ship and helicopter.
5. A person who has not had much chance to learn may be \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. landscape 2. organization 3. obey 4. millionaire  
5. ignorant

#### 《第四部分》

|                                                      |                                                            |             |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>parliament</b> n. 国会<br>[ˈpɑːləmənt]<br>同congress | <b>Parliament</b> is the lawmaking group in Great Britain. | 国会在英国是立法团体。 |
| <b>pepper</b> [ˈpepə]<br>n. 胡椒                       | <b>Pepper</b> is used for making food taste better.        | 胡椒可使食物更美味。  |

|                                                         |                                                                                          |                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>poetry</b> ['pɔɪtri]<br>n. 诗                         | The teacher praised her great efforts at <b>poetry</b> .                                 | 老师称赞她肯下苦功作诗。          |
| <b>preview</b> ['pri:vju:]<br>n. 试映                     | Before the movie was shown to the students, there was a <b>preview</b> for the teachers. | 在电影放映给学生看前,对老师先有一场试映。 |
| <b>provide</b> [prə'vaɪd]<br>v. 供应<br>同 supply, furnish | The farm <b>provided</b> them with all the food they needed.                             | 农场供应他们所有需要的食物。        |
| <b>reckless</b> ['rekli:s]<br>adj. 鲁莽的                  | Two children were killed by a <b>reckless</b> driver.                                    | 两个孩子被鲁莽的司机撞死。         |
| <b>repair</b> [ri'peə]<br>v. 修理<br>同 mend, fix          | We'd better <b>repair</b> the house before we move into it.                              | 在我们搬进去前,最好先修理一下房子。    |
| <b>saint</b> [seɪnt]<br>n. 圣人                           | They named their child after the <b>saint</b> .                                          | 他们用圣人的名字来给他们的孩子命名。    |
| <b>search</b> [sə:tʃ]<br>v. 寻找                          | We <b>searched</b> all day for the lost cat.                                             | 我们整日寻找那只走失的猫。         |
| <b>sheriff</b> ['ʃerɪf]<br>n. 警长                        | The <b>sheriff</b> brought the captured criminal before the judge.                       | 警长将被捕的罪犯带到法官面前。       |

**Exercise 10.4:** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ in the United Kingdom is made up of the Queen, the Lords, and the elected representatives of the people.
2. Shakespeare and Milton were masters of English \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ driving causes many automobile accidents.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ pursued the man who robbed the bank.
5. They will \_\_\_\_\_ the school building during the summer vacation.



【解答】 1. parliament 2. poetry 3. Reckless 4. sheriff 5. repair

### 《第五部分》

|                                                                        |                                                                                                                            |                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>specialist</b> <i>n.</i> 专家<br>['speʃəlist]                         | The patient was advised to see a heart <b>specialist</b> .                                                                 | 有人劝那病人去看一个心脏专家。                             |
| <b>stalk</b> [stɔ:k]<br><i>v.</i> 1. 潜近<br>2. 大步地走                     | The hunter <b>stalked</b> the lion.<br><br>With her head in the air, she <b>stalked</b> out of the room.                   | 猎人潜行接近狮子。<br><br>她趾高气扬,大步地走出房间。             |
| <i>n.</i> 茎;柄<br>同 stem                                                | The trunk of a tree and the <b>stalks</b> of corn are stems.                                                               | 树干和谷茎都属于茎。                                  |
| <b>strict</b> [strikt]<br><i>adj.</i> 严格的                              | They were very <b>strict</b> with their children.                                                                          | 他们对孩子非常严格。                                  |
| <b>survey</b> [sə:'vei]<br><i>v.</i> 俯瞰                                | He stood on the hill and <b>surveyed</b> the surrounding country.                                                          | 他站在山上,俯瞰四周的乡间。                              |
| <b>temper</b> ['tempə]<br><i>n.</i> 心情                                 | He was in a good <b>temper</b> yesterday and smiled all day.                                                               | 他昨天心情好,整天都挂着微笑。                             |
| <b>tin</b> [tin]<br><i>n.</i> 锡                                        | The house over there has a <b>tin</b> roof.                                                                                | 那边的那幢房子,有个锡做的屋顶。                            |
| <b>trim</b> [trim]<br><i>v.</i> 修剪<br><i>adj.</i> 整洁的                  | The student had his hair <b>trimmed</b> .<br><br>The new house has a <b>trim</b> appearance.                               | 那个学生修剪了头发。<br><br>那幢新房子的外观整洁。               |
| <b>venture</b> ['ventʃə]<br><i>n.</i> 冒险<br><i>v.</i> 冒...之险<br>同 risk | If his business <b>venture</b> succeeds, he will be wealthy.<br><br>He <b>ventured</b> his life to save her from drowning. | 如果他的业务冒险成功,他将变得富有。<br><br>他冒着生命危险救她,使她不被淹死。 |

**wealthy** ['welθi]  
adj. 富有的

Mr. Johnson is a very  
**wealthy** man.

强生先生是个非常  
富有的人。

**wrist** [rist]  
n. 手腕

He took the girl by the  
**wrist**.

他抓住那女孩子的手腕。

**Exercise 10.5:** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The carpenter \_\_\_\_\_ the lumber with a plane.
2. This can is made of steel protected by a coating of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She is in bad \_\_\_\_\_ because she missed the bus and had to walk to work.
4. Dr. White is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in diseases of the nose and throat.
5. The buyers \_\_\_\_\_ the goods offered for sale.

**【解答】** 1. trimmed 2. tin 3. temper 4. specialist 5. surveyed

### 成 果 测 验

**Exercise 10.6:** 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词:

1. *bold* behavior  
(A) common (B) brave (C) lazy (D) military
2. in a good *temper*  
(A) speed (B) stake  
(C) disposition (D) temperature
3. to *repair* shoes  
(A) stretch (B) accord (C) mend (D) make
4. to *inquire* something  
(A) ask (B) identify (C) require (D) protest
5. to *expose* one's secret  
(A) forgive (B) conceal (C) object (D) disclose

- \_\_\_ 6. *reckless* behavior  
(A) safe (B) careless (C) innocent (D) earnest
- \_\_\_ 7. a *farewell* speech  
(A) goodbye (B) competent (C) powerful (D) honorable
- \_\_\_ 8. to get treated without *distinction* of rank  
(A) consolation (B) discrimination  
(C) function (D) disposition
- \_\_\_ 9. the *decayed* teeth  
(A) repaired (B) golden (C) rotten (D) shaking
- \_\_\_ 10. to *applaud* the singer  
(A) account (B) complain (C) accord (D) cheer

**【解答】** 1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. D

**Exercise 10. 7:** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. 专家  
(A) literature (B) saint (C) host (D) specialist
- \_\_\_ 2. 谋杀  
(A) liver (B) destruction (C) murder (D) stalk
- \_\_\_ 3. 抱怨  
(A) complain (B) deteriorate (C) acclaim (D) furnish
- \_\_\_ 4. 整洁的  
(A) swift (B) trim (C) trivial (D) mild
- \_\_\_ 5. 坠毁  
(A) rent (B) crack (C) crash (D) stake

**【解答】** 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C

**Exercise 10.8:** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *swift*

- (A) huge (B) strict (C) gradual (D) trivial

\_\_\_ 2. *cowardly*

- (A) average (B) miserable (C) innocent (D) bold

\_\_\_ 3. *reply*

- (A) inquire (B) award (C) deserve (D) uncover

\_\_\_ 4. *trivial*

- (A) reckless (B) important (C) gradual (D) wealthy

\_\_\_ 5. *illiterate*

- (A) tiny (B) ignorant (C) learned (D) daring

**【解答】** 1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C

**Exercise 10.9:** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. I remember that our English teacher was very s \_ \_ \_ t. (严格的)
2. The author's m \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ t was accepted for publication. (原稿)
3. You work very hard; you d \_ \_ \_ \_ e good pay. (应得)
4. She broke her right w \_ \_ \_ \_ t by falling on the ice. (手腕)
5. A father must p \_ \_ \_ \_ e food and clothes for his children. (供应)

**【解答】** 1. strict 2. manuscript 3. deserve 4. wrist 5. provide

**Exercise 10.10:** 选出最适合句意的一个单词:

1. Your presence was a \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ to me at such a sad time.  
(A) discrimination (B) consolation (C) crash (D) stalk

2. The lightning was followed by a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of thunder.  
 (A) crash (B) echo (C) stake (D) trick
3. The film which has been \_\_\_\_\_ to light is no longer usable.  
 (A) provided (B) decayed (C) expressed (D) exposed
4. A person who is \_\_\_\_\_ can't write his own name.  
 (A) lame (B) ignorant (C) idle (D) innocent
5. The gardener \_\_\_\_\_ the dead branches from the trees.  
 (A) deserved (B) protected (C) trimmed (D) repaired

**【解答】** 1. B      2. A      3. D      4. B      5. C

**Exercise 10. 11:** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当词性,填入空格中:

1. *inquire* My \_\_\_\_\_ about his health was never answered.
2. *complain* The children were full of \_\_\_\_\_ about their food.
3. *obey* Soldiers act in \_\_\_\_\_ to the orders of their superior officers.
4. *distinction* The twins were so much alike that it was impossible to \_\_\_\_\_ one from the other.
5. *expose* \_\_\_\_\_ of the body to strong sunlight may be harmful.

**【解答】** 1. inquiry      2. complaints      3. obedience  
 4. distinguish      5. Exposure

## LESSON 11

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

1. A baby *crawls* before it \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) walks (B) sleeps
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ for receiving or entertaining guests is called a *parlor*.  
(A) woman (B) room
3. *Poisonous* medicine is \_\_\_\_\_ to our body.  
(A) harmful (B) good
4. An *ankle* is the joint that connects the \_\_\_\_\_ and the leg.  
(A) hip (B) foot
5. A *bachelor* is an unmarried \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) man (B) woman

△ 解答 △  
1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A

## 《第一部分》

**accustom** *v.* 习惯于

[ə'kʌstəm]

☐ habituate

She could not **accustom** her-  
self to a hot climate in  
Africa.

她无法习惯非洲炎  
热的气候。

**ankle** ['æŋkl]*n.* 足踝

Human beings and all other  
animals that have feet and  
legs have **ankles**.

人类和其他所有有  
脚腿的动物都有足  
踝。

**bachelor** ['bætʃələ]*n.* 单身汉

☐ spinster

The young **bachelor** will  
soon be taking a wife.

那年轻的单身汉不  
久就会娶太太。

|                                                                          |                                                                                               |                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>border</b> ['bɔ:də]<br>n. 边<br>同 frontier                             | When we went camping, we put up our tents on the <b>border</b> of the lake.                   | 露营时,我们在湖边扎营。        |
| <b>calm</b> [kɑ:m]<br>adj. 沉着的                                           | Mother's <b>calm</b> behavior made the frightened child quiet.                                | 母亲沉着的态度使那受惊的孩子安静下来。 |
| <b>chew</b> [tʃu:]<br>v. 咀嚼                                              | You should <b>chew</b> your food well before you swallow it.                                  | 你应该先细嚼食物后,才吞下去。     |
| <b>complex</b> adj. 复杂的<br>['kɒmpleks]<br>同 complicated<br>n. complexity | The instructions for building the radio were so <b>complex</b> that we could not follow them. | 组合收音机的说明太复杂了,我们看不懂。 |
| <b>consolidate</b> n. 巩固<br>[kən'solideɪt]<br>同 solidify                 | Britain is trying to <b>consolidate</b> her position in the North Atlantic.                   | 英国试图巩固她在北大西洋的地位。    |
| <b>crawl</b> [krɔ:l]<br>v. 爬<br>同 creep                                  | The wounded soldier tried to <b>crawl</b> back to the tent.                                   | 那伤兵试图爬回帐篷。          |
| <b>decent</b> ['di:snt]<br>adj. 合式的; 不差的; 正当的                            | You need <b>decent</b> clothes when you go to church.                                         | 你去教堂时要穿合式的衣服。       |

**Exercise 11.1:** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. You can get quite a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ meal there without spending too much money.
2. The presidential candidate \_\_\_\_\_ his reputation by winning several primary elections.
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ a mouthful of meat but it was too much to swallow.
4. The Rio Grande River is the \_\_\_\_\_ between the United States and Mexico.
5. Hunting dogs are \_\_\_\_\_ to the noise of a gun.

【解答】 1. decent      2. consolidated      3. chewed  
4. border      5. accustomed

《第二部分》

|                                                                     |                                                                                 |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>despair</b> [dis'peə]<br>n. 绝望<br>☐ hope ☐ desperation           | A feeling of <b>despair</b> came over him as the boat sank deeper in the water. | 当船在水中沉得更深时,他感到绝望。  |
| <b>distress</b> [dis'tres]<br>n. 悲痛<br>☐ worry<br>☐ comfort, relief | Her husband has just died and she is in great <b>distress</b> .                 | 她的丈夫刚死,所以她非常悲痛。    |
| <b>edge</b> [edʒ]<br>n. 边缘<br>☐ margin, border<br>☐ center          | Don't put the glass on the <b>edge</b> of the table; it may get knocked off.    | 不要将杯子放在桌边;它可能会被打落。 |
| <b>enterprise</b> n. 企业<br>['entəpraɪz]<br>☐ business               | Building the steel manufacturing company is a great <b>enterprise</b> .         | 成立钢铁厂是项大企业。        |
| <b>export</b> ['eksɒ:t]<br>n. 输出<br>☐ import                        | Last year our <b>exports</b> exceeded our imports in value.                     | 去年我们的输出货物在价值上超过输入。 |
| <b>fasten</b> ['fa:sn]<br>v. 固定                                     | He <b>fastened</b> the pages together with a pin.                               | 他用大头针将文件钉在一起。      |
| <b>flesh</b> [fleʃ]<br>n. 肉                                         | A fat man has much more <b>flesh</b> than a thin man.                           | 胖子的肉比瘦子的肉要多得多。     |
| <b>fund</b> [fʌnd]<br>n. 基金<br>☐ capital                            | That <b>fund</b> will be used for the expenses of the poor people.              | 那份基金将用来作为穷人的津贴。    |



|                                                        |                                                                 |                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>graduate</b> v. 毕业<br>['grædʒueɪt]<br>n. graduation | Her brother <b>graduated</b> from Harvard University last year. | 她兄弟去年毕业于哈佛大学。    |
| <b>heal</b> [hi:l]<br>v. 治愈<br>同 cure                  | The medicine and rest will soon <b>heal</b> your wound.         | 药物和休息很快就能治愈你的伤口。 |

**Exercise 11.2:** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He was filled with \_\_\_\_\_ as his enemies crowded around him.
2. The high cost of living is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to most people.
3. Ship-building is one of the biggest \_\_\_\_\_ in this country.
4. Wood is one of the chief \_\_\_\_\_ of Australia.
5. The sharp knife cut into the \_\_\_\_\_ of his arm.

**【解答】** 1. despair 2. distress 3. enterprises 4. exports 5. flesh

### 《第三部分》

|                                                            |                                                                             |                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>illustrate</b> v. 说明<br>['ɪləstreɪt]<br>n. illustration | The teacher compared the heart to a pump to <b>illustrate</b> its function. | 老师将心脏比喻成唧筒,以说明心脏的功能。 |
| <b>insist</b> [ɪn'sɪst]<br>v. 坚持                           | She <b>insisted</b> that she was right.                                     | 她坚持她是对的。             |
| <b>jar</b> [dʒɑ:]<br>n. 广口瓶                                | A <b>jar</b> has a wide mouth and sometimes has two handles.                | 广口瓶有个大口,有时候还有两个把手。   |
| <b>lane</b> [leɪn]<br>n. 巷<br>同 passage                    | He was driving his car down the narrow <b>lane</b> in the town.             | 他正沿着城中的窄巷开车。         |
| <b>loan</b> [ləʊn]<br>n. 贷款                                | He asked his brother for a small <b>loan</b> to buy a house.                | 他向他兄弟借一点钱买房子。        |

|                                                                      |                                                                                                            |                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>maple</b> ['meɪpl]<br>n. 枫树                                       | We have a <b>maple</b> in our yard.                                                                        | 我们院内有棵枫树。                          |
| <b>mingle</b> ['mɪŋɡl]<br>v. 交往<br>同 mix, blend                      | It is not easy for him to <b>mingle</b> with people because he was very shy.                               | 由于他非常害羞, 因此和人群交往, 对他来说不是件简单的事。     |
| <b>muscle</b> ['mʌsl]<br>n. 肌肉                                       | You can develop your arm <b>muscle</b> by playing tennis.                                                  | 你可以靠打网球使你的臂肌发达。                    |
| <b>object</b> ['ɒbdʒɪkt]<br>n. 物体<br>[əb'dʒekt]v. 反对<br>n. objection | A dark <b>object</b> moved between me and the door.<br>He stood up and <b>objected</b> in strong language. | 一个黑色物体在我 和门间移动着。<br>他站起来以激烈的 言词反对。 |
| <b>origin</b> ['ɒrɪdʒɪn]<br>n. 起源<br>同 source                        | Ancient Greece is often called the <b>origin</b> of Western civilization.                                  | 古希腊常被称为西 方文明的起源。                   |

**Exercise 11.3:** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- I \_\_\_\_\_ to being treated like a child.
- He injured the \_\_\_\_\_ of his arm by throwing the heavy weight.
- The king often left his palace at night, and \_\_\_\_\_ with the unknown people in the streets.
- He asked me for a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of five hundred dollars.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ of this river is a stream in the mountains.

**【解答】** 1. object 2. muscles 3. mingled 4. loan 5. origin

#### 《第四部分》

|                                 |                                                                  |                |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>parlor</b> ['pɑ:lə]<br>n. 客厅 | The <b>parlor</b> was crowded with many people during the party. | 在宴会中,客厅挤满了许多人。 |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|

|                                                             |                                                                                                                  |                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>perceive</b> [pə'si:v]<br>v. 察觉<br>n. perception         | I soon <b>perceived</b> that I could not change his mind.                                                        | 我很快就发觉我不能使他改变想法。                       |
| <b>poisonous</b> <i>adj.</i> 有毒的<br>['pɔɪznəs]<br>n. poison | Some plants have <b>poisonous</b> roots or fruits.                                                               | 有些植物的根或果实有毒。                           |
| <b>previous</b> ['pri:vjəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 先前的              | I can't go; for I have a <b>previ-ous</b> engagement.                                                            | 我不能去, 因为我有约在先。                         |
| <b>province</b> ['prɒvɪns]<br>n. 省                          | Most countries are divided into several <b>provinces</b> .                                                       | 大多数国家被分成好几省。                           |
| <b>recommend</b> v. 劝告<br>[rekə'mend]<br>n. recommendation  | The doctor <b>recommended</b> that she should stay in bed for a week.                                            | 医生劝她应该在床上躺一星期。                         |
| <b>replace</b> [ri'pleɪs]<br>v. 代替<br>n. replacement        | Most telephone operators have been <b>replaced</b> by dial telephones.                                           | 大多数的电话接线生已被自动电话取代。                     |
| <b>ridiculous</b> [ri'dɪkjələs]<br><i>adj.</i> 荒谬的; 可笑的     | It would be <b>ridiculous</b> to speak ill of one's parents in public.                                           | 公开说自己父母亲的坏话是荒谬的。                       |
| <b>shift</b> [ʃɪft]<br>v. 转移<br>同 change                    | The wind <b>shifted</b> from east to west.                                                                       | 风向由东转西。                                |
| <b>slip</b> [slɪp]<br>v. 滑倒<br>同 slide<br>n. 纸片             | She <b>slipped</b> on the ice and hurt her hand.<br><br>He inserted a <b>slip</b> marking his place in the book. | 她在冰上摔倒伤了手。<br><br>他在书中插入纸片, 以指明他读到的地方。 |

**Exercise 11. 4:** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ on the icy road and broke his leg.

2. You look very \_\_\_\_\_ in that old hat.
3. His former employer \_\_\_\_\_ Miss Kim as a good typist.
4. Have you had any \_\_\_\_\_ experience, or is this kind of work new to you?
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of their house is nicely decorated.

【解答】 1. slipped      2. ridiculous      3. recommended  
4. previous      5. parlor

《第五部分》

|                                                   |                                                                                            |                           |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>sphere</b> [sfɪə]<br>n. 球                      | All points on the surface of a <b>sphere</b> are equally distant from the center.          | 球心到球面上任何一点的距离都一样。         |
| <b>startle</b> ['stɑ:tɪl]<br>v. 使吃惊               | I was <b>startled</b> at the news of his death.                                            | 他死亡的消息使我大吃一惊。             |
| <b>stroke</b> [strouk]<br>n. 钟鸣声                  | The <b>strokes</b> of the church bell awakened us.                                         | 教堂的钟声敲醒了我们。               |
| <b>suspicion</b> [səs'piʃən]<br>n. 嫌疑             | The young man is under <b>suspicion</b> of murder.                                         | 那年轻人有谋杀的嫌疑。               |
| <b>temple</b> ['tempəl]<br>n. 1. 寺庙<br>2. 太阳穴     | The people went to the <b>temple</b> to pray.<br>He had a cut on his right <b>temple</b> . | 人们到寺庙里祈祷。<br>他右边太阳穴上有道伤痕。 |
| <b>toad</b> [toud]<br>n. 蟾蜍                       | <b>Toads</b> have shorter legs and are generally clumsier than frogs.                      | 蟾蜍的腿比青蛙短,而且通常比青蛙丑。        |
| <b>troublesome</b><br>['trʌblsəm]<br>adj. 讨厌的;麻烦的 | He is the most <b>troublesome</b> person in our class.                                     | 他是我们班上最讨厌的人。              |

|                                       |                                                                              |                      |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>vessel</b> ['vesl]<br>n. 1. 容器     | Empty <b>vessels</b> make the most sound.                                    | 空容器最响。(满瓶不响, 半瓶响叮当。) |
| 2. 管                                  | The mark on her skin was caused by broken blood <b>ves-</b><br><b>sels</b> . | 她皮肤上的伤疤是因血管破裂所造成。    |
| 3. 船只<br>同 ship, boat                 | The port of London is filled with <b>vessels</b> of all kinds.               | 伦敦港口停满了各式各样的船只。      |
| <b>web</b> [web]<br>n. 网              | A spider captures small in-<br>sects with its <b>web</b> .                   | 蜘蛛用网捕捉小昆虫。           |
| <b>yell</b> [jel]<br>n. 喊叫<br>同 shout | His <b>yell</b> of anger could be<br>heard in the next room.                 | 隔壁房间都听得见他生气的叫喊声。     |
| v. 呼喊                                 | During the game the stu-<br>dents often <b>yelled</b> with<br>cheers.        | 比赛中, 学生们经常大声欢呼。      |

**Exercise 11.5:** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Bowls and cups were among the ancient \_\_\_\_\_ they found.
2. She was \_\_\_\_\_ to see him looking so ill.
3. She can't swim yet, but has made a few \_\_\_\_\_ with her arms.
4. The real thief tried to turn \_\_\_\_\_ toward others.
5. Ancient Greek \_\_\_\_\_ were beautifully built.

**【解答】** 1. vessels 2. startled 3. strokes 4. suspicion 5. temples

## 成果测验

**Exercise 11. 6:** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

- \_\_\_1. (A)surprise (B)frighten (C)flee (D)startle  
 \_\_\_2. (A)province (B)margin (C)edge (D)border  
 \_\_\_3. (A)ridiculous (B)absurd (C)silly (D)reckless  
 \_\_\_4. (A)blend (B)replace (C)mingle (D)mix  
 \_\_\_5. (A)vessel (B)ship (C)boat (D)cabin  
 \_\_\_6. (A)accustom (B)consolidate (C)habituate (D)familiarize  
 \_\_\_7. (A)margin (B)source (C)beginning (D)origin

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. D 6. B 7. A

**Exercise 11. 7:** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_1. 嫌疑  
 (A)disposition (B)suspicion (C)venture (D)province  
 \_\_\_2. 毕业  
 (A)graduate (B)illuminate (C)perceive (D)shift  
 \_\_\_3. 爬  
 (A)heal (B)slip (C)stalk (D)crawl  
 \_\_\_4. 咀嚼  
 (A)shift (B)slip (C)chew (D)creep  
 \_\_\_5. 坚持  
 (A)perceive (B)insist (C)object (D)consolidate

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B

**Exercise 11.8:** 找出一个斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *loosen*

- (A)enrich (B)fasten (C)fold (D)untie

\_\_\_ 2. *relief*

- (A)suspicion (B)border (C)operation (D)distress

\_\_\_ 3. *import*

- (A)edge (B)object (C)export (D)report

\_\_\_ 4. *silly*

- (A)wise (B)calm (C)troublesome (D)careless

\_\_\_ 5. *edge*

- (A)margin (B)center (C)sphere (D)temple

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 11.9:** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. I tell you that d \_\_\_\_\_ t people just don't do things like that. (正当的)

2. Some people believe in private e \_\_\_\_\_ e, while others believe in government ownership of industry. (企业)

3. His political ideas were too c \_\_\_\_\_ x to get support from ordinary people. (复杂的)

4. A good traveler can a \_\_\_\_\_ m himself to almost any kind of food. (习惯于)

5. He could not p \_\_\_\_\_ e any difference between the twins. (察觉)

**【解答】** 1. decent 2. enterprise 3. complex 4. accustom 5. perceive

**Exercise 11. 10:** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_ 1. His cut finger *healed* in a few days.  
(A)cured (B)decayed (C)weakened (D)deteriorated
- \_\_\_\_ 2. The teacher cut an apple into four equal pieces to *illustrate* what 1/4 means.  
(A)familiarize (B)replace (C)perceive (D)explain
- \_\_\_\_ 3. Although she was frightened, she answered with a *calm* voice.  
(A)silly (B)simple (C)quiet (D)humble
- \_\_\_\_ 4. She did better in the *previous* lesson.  
(A)troublesome (B)easily (C)following (D)gradual
- \_\_\_\_ 5. The unexpected noise *startled* the audience.  
(A)mingled (B)frightened (C)started (D)exposed
- \_\_\_\_ 6. He broke the lock with one *stroke* of the hammer.  
(A)crack (B)crash (C)wrist (D)blow
- \_\_\_\_ 7. He *shifted* the suitcase from one hand to another.  
(A)changed (B)replaced (C)mended (D)stalked
- \_\_\_\_ 8. The President walked down a *lane* formed by two lines of soldiers.  
(A)edge (B)passage (C)loan (D)sphere
- \_\_\_\_ 9. Part of the school sports *fund* will be used to improve the condition of the football field.  
(A)capital (B)loan (C)ground (D)equipment
- \_\_\_\_ 10. The failure of the rice harvest will cause great *distress* among the farmers.  
(A)worry (B)debt (C)yell (D)damage

**【解答】** 1. A 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. A



## LESSON 12

## 预备测验

◎ 选出最适当的答案：

- Many museums have collections of *priceless* paintings by \_\_\_\_ artists.  
(A) famous (B) poor
- There wasn't enough \_\_\_\_\_ to *float* the wood.  
(A) water (B) fire
- Those \_\_\_\_\_ over there are not *edible*.  
(A) books (B) fruits
- He was *jealous* of his neighbor's \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) failure (B) success
- His long speech *bored* me so that I heard all his stories with \_\_\_\_\_ interest.  
(A) little (B) great

## △ 解答 △

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A

## 《第一部分》

**ache** [eɪk]

n. 疼痛

同 pain

The boy is trying to forget  
the **ache** in his back.那男孩试图忘掉背  
部的疼痛。**apparent** [ə'pærənt]

adj. 明显的

同 obvious

It is **apparent** that you dis-  
like your job.显然你不喜欢你的  
工作。**barn** [bɑ:n]

n. 谷仓

A farmer keeps his crops in  
the **barn**.农民将谷物收藏在  
谷仓中。

|                                                        |                                                                            |                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>bore</b> [bɔ:]<br>v. 使人厌烦<br>n. boredom             | The man <b>bores</b> me; I've heard all his stories before.                | 那男人使我厌烦; 我早就听说过他的所有故事了。 |
| <b>canal</b> [kə'næl]<br>n. 运河                         | <b>Canals</b> have been built to take water to the desert.                 | 建造运河是用来将水运送到沙漠。         |
| <b>chilly</b> [ˈtʃili]<br>adj. 寒冷的<br>n. chill         | You will feel <b>chilly</b> if you don't wear a coat in a cold day.        | 如果你在冷天不穿上外套, 将会感觉寒冷。    |
| <b>compose</b> [kəm'pouz]<br>v. 组成<br>n. composition   | The chemistry teacher asked the students what water is <b>composed</b> of. | 化学老师问学生, 水是由什么组成的。      |
| <b>constant</b> [ˈkɒnstənt]<br>adj. 不断的<br>同 continual | He was tired of his wife's <b>constant</b> complaint.                      | 他厌倦他太太不停地抱怨。            |
| <b>create</b> [kri(:)'eit]<br>v. 创造<br>n. creation     | The Bible said that God <b>created</b> this world in seven days.           | 圣经上说, 上帝在七天内创造了这个世界。    |
| <b>decisive</b> [di'saisiv]<br>adj. 确定的<br>v. decide   | Our air force was <b>decisive</b> in winning the war.                      | 我们的空军确定能赢得这场战役。         |

**Exercise 12.1** 从一部分中选出最适当的一个英文词, 填入空格内:

1. Crops and food for animals are usually stored in the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ are used for ships or for carrying water to places that need it.
3. I hope you are not getting \_\_\_\_\_ listening to me.
4. The king was given a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ welcome when he arrived on the island.
5. Three days of \_\_\_\_\_ rain made the river overflow its bank.

**【解答】** 1. barn 2. Canals 3. bored 4. chilly 5. constant

## 《第二部分》

|                                                                         |                                                                                  |                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>desperate</b> ['despərit]<br><i>adj.</i> 1. 绝望的                      | The prisoners became <b>desperate</b> in their attempts to get free.             | 囚犯对企图逃脱一事不再抱希望。          |
| 2. 自暴自弃的<br>同 hopeless                                                  | She became so <b>desperate</b> that we feared for her sanity.                    | 她变得如此自暴自弃,使我们担心她的神智。     |
| <b>district</b> ['distrikt]<br><i>n.</i> 区域<br>同 region, area           | The farming <b>district</b> of the United States is in the Middle West.          | 美国的农业区在中西部。              |
| <b>edible</b> ['edibl]<br><i>adj.</i> 可食的                               | This apple is rotten and no longer <b>edible</b> .                               | 这个苹果已腐烂,不能再吃了。           |
| <b>entertain</b> [entə'tein]<br><i>v.</i> 娱乐<br><i>n.</i> entertainment | The circus <b>entertained</b> the children.                                      | 马戏团娱乐了孩子们。               |
| <b>explore</b> [iks'plɔ:]<br><i>v.</i> 探险<br>同 search                   | Columbus discovered America but did not <b>explore</b> the new continent.        | 哥伦布发现美洲,可是并没有到那块新大陆上去探险。 |
| <b>fate</b> [feit]<br><i>n.</i> 命运;天命                                   | It was their <b>fate</b> to meet and marry.                                      | 他们的相识和结合是天意。             |
| <b>float</b> [flaʊt]<br><i>v.</i> 飘浮                                    | Wood <b>floats</b> on water and dust <b>floats</b> in the air.                   | 木头浮于水上,灰尘则飘于空中。          |
| <b>fundamental</b><br>[ˌfʌndə'menti]<br><i>adj.</i> 基本的                 | There's a <b>fundamental</b> difference between the 2 ministries.                | 这两个内阁之间有本质的不同。           |
| <b>grand</b> [grænd]<br><i>adj.</i> 壮伟的<br>同 magnificent                | The <b>grand</b> sight of the Niagara Falls cannot be forgotten for a long time. | 尼亚加拉瀑布的壮观景象深入人心。         |

|                         |                                  |          |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|----------|
| <b>healthy</b> ['helθi] | The children are quite           | 孩子们此时虽然都 |
| <i>adj.</i> 健康的         | <b>healthy</b> although they all | 有轻微的感冒,可 |
| 同 wholesome             | have slight colds at the mo-     | 是仍相当健康。  |
|                         | ment.                            |          |

**Exercise 12.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. There is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ difference between your proposal and mine.
2. The boat was \_\_\_\_\_ down the river when I saw it.
3. Many people blame \_\_\_\_\_ for their failure in life.
4. Can you distinguish the \_\_\_\_\_ and the poisonous mushrooms?
5. His failure made him \_\_\_\_\_ and he resolved to succeed next time or die in the attempt.

【解答】 1. fundamental 2. floating 3. fate 4. edible 5. desperate

### 《第三部分》

|                           |                                     |            |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>imagine</b> [i'mædʒɪn] | I can <b>imagine</b> the scene      | 我能在脑中清晰地   |
| <i>v.</i> 想像              | clearly in my mind.                 | 想像出那情景。    |
| <i>n.</i> imagination     |                                     |            |
| <b>inspire</b> [ɪn'spaɪə] | His brother's success <b>in-</b>    | 他兄弟的成功激励   |
| <i>v.</i> 激励              | <b>spired</b> the boy to work hard- | 了那男孩更努力工作。 |
| <i>n.</i> inspiration     | er.                                 |            |
| <b>jealous</b> ['dʒeləs]  | He was very <b>jealous</b> when     | 当他发现她爱上别   |
| <i>adj.</i> 嫉妒的           | he discovered that she loved        | 人时,非常嫉妒。   |
| <i>n.</i> jealousy        | someone else.                       |            |
| <b>lantern</b> ['læntən]  | My wife bought a beautiful          | 我太太买了一个漂   |
| <i>n.</i> 灯笼              | Chinese <b>lantern</b> for the liv- | 亮的中国式灯笼来   |
|                           | ing room.                           | 装饰客厅。      |
| <b>local</b> ['ləʊkəl]    | We have a small <b>local</b> broad- | 我们镇上有个小规   |
| <i>adj.</i> 地方的;当地的       | casting station in our town.        | 模的地方广播电    |
| 同 provincial              |                                     | 台。         |

|                                                         |                                                                                         |                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>marble</b> ['mɑ:bl]<br>n. 大理石                        | He was buried in a <b>marble</b> tomb.                                                  | 他被葬在大理石的坟墓里。               |
| <b>minor</b> ['maɪnə]<br>adj. 次要的<br>n. minority        | The young actress was given a <b>minor</b> part in the new play.                        | 那年轻的女演员在新剧中被分到一个配角。        |
| <b>mutual</b> ['mju:tʃuəl]<br>adj. 共同的<br>同 reciprocal  | We were happy to have him as our <b>mutual</b> friend.                                  | 我们很高兴让他成为我们共同的朋友。          |
| <b>objective</b> [əb'dʒektiv]<br>n. 目的<br>同 goal, aim   | She always wanted to own her own house, and now she had obtained her <b>objective</b> . | 她总是想拥有一栋属于自己的房子, 现在她已达到目的。 |
| <b>ornament</b> ['ɔ:nəmənt]<br>n. 装饰<br>adj. ornamental | There were carved <b>ornaments</b> on the cabinet door.                                 | 橱柜门上有雕刻的装饰。                |

**Exercise 12.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. When my little brother sees mother holding the new baby, he becomes \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The front of the building was covered with \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He left most of his money to his son; his daughter received only a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ part of his wealth.
4. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ life without gas, electricity, radio, and other modern conveniences?
5. We must bring a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to stay overnight in the mountain.

**【解答】** 1. jealous 2. marble 3. minor 4. imagine 5. lantern

## 《第四部分》

|                                                                                            |                                                                                                                               |                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>partial</b> ['pɑ:ʃəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 1. 一部分的<br>2. 偏袒的<br>同 <i>biased</i> 反 <i>fair</i> | The play was only a <b>partial</b> success.<br><br>A parent should not be <b>partial</b> to any one of his children.          | 那出戏只成功一部分。<br><br>做父母的不应该偏袒任何一个孩子。 |
| <b>perform</b> [pə'fɔ:m]<br><i>v.</i> 1. 做; 执行<br>2. 演(戏)                                  | He always <b>performs</b> his work with great care.<br><br>What kind of play will be <b>performed</b> in the theater tonight? | 他一向很谨慎地执行工作。<br><br>今晚戏院将演出什么戏剧?   |
| <b>priceless</b> ['praɪslɪs]<br><i>adj.</i> 贵重的                                            | Only a very rich man could afford to buy these <b>priceless</b> paintings.                                                    | 只有非常有钱的人才买得起这些贵重的画。                |
| <b>publish</b> ['pʌblɪʃ]<br><i>v.</i> 发表; 出版<br><i>n.</i> publication                      | It is a good story, but we can't <b>publish</b> it; it would offend too many people.                                          | 这是一个好故事, 可是我们不能发表, 因为它会冒犯许多人。      |
| <b>recognize</b> ['rekəɡnaɪz]<br><i>v.</i> 认出<br><i>n.</i> recognition                     | Honesty and sincerity in students are easily <b>recognized</b> by teachers.                                                   | 老师很容易就看出学生的诚实和真挚。                  |
| <b>repeat</b> [ri'pi:t]<br><i>v.</i> 重做                                                    | If you <b>repeat</b> that mistake, you will be punished.                                                                      | 如果你再犯那个错误, 将会受罚。                   |
| <b>reward</b> [ri'wɔ:d]<br><i>n.</i> 报答                                                    | As a <b>reward</b> for his bravery, the soldier was given a gold medal.                                                       | 为报答他的勇敢, 这个士兵被授予一面金牌。              |
| <b>sake</b> [seɪk]<br><i>n.</i> 缘故<br>同 <i>benefit</i>                                     | If you won't do it for your own <b>sake</b> , then do it for my <b>sake</b> .                                                 | 如果你不是为了自己做这件事, 那么就算是为我吧。           |
| <b>secret</b> ['si:krit]<br><i>adj.</i> 秘密的                                                | He kept some money in a <b>secret</b> place.                                                                                  | 他将一些钱存放在一个隐密的地方。                   |

*n.* 奥秘

The old man had learned many of the *secrets* of nature. 那老人知道许多大自然的奥秘。

**Exercise 12.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. You can easily \_\_\_\_\_ silverware with this special cloth.
2. These plans must be kept \_\_\_\_\_ from the enemy.
3. He fought the war for the \_\_\_\_\_ of his country's freedom.
4. To buy books for your children is a \_\_\_\_\_ investment for them.
5. He received a title as a \_\_\_\_\_ for his services.

**【解答】** 1. polish 2. secret 3. sake 4. priceless 5. reward

### 《第五部分》

**shield** [ʃi:ld]

*n.* 盾

同 spear

The *shield* protected him from the blows of his enemy. 这面盾保护他免受敌人的打击。

*v.* 遮护

同 protect

Her wide hat *shielded* her eyes from the sun. 宽帽遮护她的眼睛以防日晒。

**slight** [slait]

*adj.* 轻微的

He stayed home for a day because of a *slight* illness. 他因为小病,留在家一天。

**spell** [spel]

*n.* 1. 符咒

同 enchantment

He is under my *spell* and will do as I say. 我用符咒镇住了他,他会照着我说

的话去做。

2. 一段时间

We had a long *spell* of hot weather last summer. 去年夏天有一段很长的热天。

**stare** [steə]

*v.* 注视

同 gaze

The little girl *stared* at the strange man at the store. 小女孩在商店里注视着那陌生人。

|                                                                |                                                                                                                                                       |                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>string</b> [striŋ]<br>n. 绳<br>同 thread, cord                | The package was tied with red <b>strings</b> .                                                                                                        | 那包裹用红绳绑着。                                    |
| <b>suspect</b> [səs'pekt]<br>v. 觉察<br><br>['sʌspekt]<br>n. 嫌疑犯 | The mouse <b>suspected</b> danger and didn't touch the trap.<br><br>The police have arrested two <b>suspects</b> in connection with the bank robbery. | 老鼠觉察到危险, 没有去触那捕捉机。<br><br>警方逮捕两名与银行抢劫有关的嫌疑犯。 |
| <b>temperature</b> [ˈtempərɪtʃə]<br>n. 温度                      | What's the average <b>temperature</b> in Taipei on a summer day?                                                                                      | 台北夏天的平均温度是多少?                                |
| <b>tissue</b> ['tiʊ:<br>n. 组织                                  | The teacher showed pictures of muscle <b>tissues</b> and brain <b>tissues</b> .                                                                       | 老师展示肌肉组织和脑部组织的图片。                            |
| <b>troop</b> [tru:p]<br>n. 1. 群; 组<br><br>2. 军队<br>同 forces    | A <b>troop</b> of children gathered around the teacher.<br><br>The soldiers are preparing to attack enemy <b>troops</b> .                             | 一群孩童聚集在老师四周。<br><br>兵士们正准备攻击敌军。              |
| <b>verse</b> [və:s]<br>n. 诗; 韵文                                | A collection of his <b>verse</b> has just been published.                                                                                             | 他的一套诗集才刚出版。                                  |
| <b>weary</b> ['wiəri]<br>adj. 疲倦的<br><br>v. 使厌烦                | He felt <b>weary</b> after playing tennis for two hours.<br><br>The boy <b>wearies</b> me with constant questions.                                    | 打了两小时的网球后, 他感到疲倦。<br><br>那男孩不断地问问题, 使我厌烦。    |

**Exercise 12.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. We were under the \_\_\_\_\_ of the beautiful music.
2. He got a \_\_\_\_\_ wound on his back but is all right now.
3. She often wears a \_\_\_\_\_ of pearls around her neck.



4. The nurse took the \_\_\_\_\_ of the patient --it was 38.5 C.  
 5. The long hours of work have \_\_\_\_\_ me a lot.

**【解答】** 1. spell 2. slight 3. string 4. temperature 5. wearied

### 成 果 测 验

**Exercise 12.6** 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_ 1. *weary* in mind and body  
 (A) healthy (B) sound (C) tired (D) warm
- \_\_\_\_ 2. to cast a *spell* over someone  
 (A) marble (B) enchantment (C) stroke (D) spear
- \_\_\_\_ 3. to *stare* at someone  
 (A) gaze (B) yell (C) inspire (D) surmise
- \_\_\_\_ 4. *constant* practice  
 (A) apparent (B) hard (C) decisive (D) unceasing
- \_\_\_\_ 5. *desperate* attempts  
 (A) careless (B) decisive (C) hopeless (D) fundamental
- \_\_\_\_ 6. *edible* fish  
 (A) trivial (B) audible (C) eatable (D) tiny
- \_\_\_\_ 7. to *entertain* someone  
 (A) amuse (B) frighten (C) encourage (D) suspect
- \_\_\_\_ 8. to *explore* an unknown world  
 (A) destroy (B) search (C) perceive (D) inquire
- \_\_\_\_ 9. wonderful *ornament*  
 (A) decoration (B) enchantment (C) string (D) organization
- \_\_\_\_ 10. living in a *grand* style  
 (A) splendid (B) huge (C) gradual (D) miserable

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. A

**Exercise 12.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. 绝望的

(A) desperate (B) sake (C) saint (D) marble

\_\_\_ 2. 嫉妒的

(A) wholesome (B) obvious (C) conclusive (D) jealous

\_\_\_ 3. 大理石

(A) tissue (B) canal (C) marble (D) tin

\_\_\_ 4. 目的

(A) operation (B) objective (C) item (D) protection

\_\_\_ 5. 报答

(A) reward (B) verse (C) benefit (D) spear

**【解答】** 1. A 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. A

**Exercise 12.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *insignificant*

(A) slight (B) vigorous (C) trivial (D) important

\_\_\_ 2. *biased*

(A) reciprocal (B) partial (C) fair (D) wholesome

\_\_\_ 3. *verse*

(A) tried (B) prose (C) plain (D) chilly

\_\_\_ 4. *apparent*

(A) unclear (B) constant (C) calm (D) local

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. sink

(A) wholesome (B) float (C) healthy (D) partial

**【解答】** 1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 12.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. Doctors should p \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ m their operations with great care. (执行)
2. P \_ \_ \_ \_ h your shoes with a brush. (擦亮)
3. Dogs r \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ e people by their smell. (认出)
4. The continuous a \_ \_ e in his head worried him. (疼痛)
5. It is a \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ t that the days become longer in June and July.  
(明显的)

**【解答】** 1. perform 2. Polish 3. recognize 4. ache 5. apparent

**Exercise 12.10** 选出最适合句意的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. It is not polite to \_\_\_\_\_ at other people.  
(A) nod (B) stare (C) look (D) inspire
2. You have to present a \_\_\_\_\_ evidence in the court.  
(A) decisive (B) weary (C) silly (D) decent
3. We were all anxious about the \_\_\_\_\_ of the missing fisherman.  
(A) secret (B) ache (C) fate (D) reward
4. He has a \_\_\_\_\_ appearance even though he is not well.  
(A) weary (B) apparent (C) grand (D) wholesome
5. A family has \_\_\_\_\_ affection when each person likes the others and is liked by them.  
(A) mutual (B) provincial (C) slight (D) desperate

**【解答】** 1. B      2. A      3. C      4. D      5. A

**Exercise 12.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当词性,填入空格中:

1. *bore*      The patient spent long days of \_\_\_\_\_ in the hospital.
2. *entertain*      The city offers all kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ for young and old.
3. *repeat*      The play was a \_\_\_\_\_ of a theme used twenty years ago.
4. *minor*      The nation wants peace; only a \_\_\_\_\_ want the war to continue.
5. *chilly*      There is a \_\_\_\_\_ in the air this morning.

**【解答】** 1. boredom    2. entertainment    3. repetition  
4. minority    5. chill

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 13

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

- The boy *smashed* the window with \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) a piece of cloth (B) a stone
- The \_\_\_\_\_ caused a serious *flood*.  
(A) heavy rains (B) desperate battles
- There were some people standing on the *deck* of the \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) house (B) ship
- She gave her son some \_\_\_\_\_ for the *purchase* of his school books.  
(A) money (B) time
- Being a \_\_\_\_\_ is a *perilous* profession.  
(A) businessman (B) fireman

△ 解答 △  
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

|                                             |                                                                                                       |                        |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>achieve</b> [ə'tʃi:v]<br>v. 获得           | The soldiers fought bravely and finally <b>achieved</b> victory.                                      | 士兵们勇敢作战, 终于获得胜利。       |
| <b>appreciate</b> [ə'pri:ʃieɪt]<br>v. 1. 欣赏 | You can't <b>appreciate</b> English poetry unless you have a good knowledge of how English is spoken. | 除非你精通如何说英文, 否则无法欣赏英文诗。 |
| 2. 感激                                       | Thank you very much for your help; I <b>appreciate</b> it.                                            | 非常感谢你的帮忙, 我很感激。        |
| <b>basis</b> ['beɪsɪs]<br>n. 根据             | We judge a worker on the <b>basis</b> of his performance.                                             | 我们以工作成绩作为评估一个工人的根据。    |

|                                           |                                                                            |                            |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>bother</b> ['bɒðə]<br>v. 烦扰            | Don't <b>bother</b> me with such foolish questions.                        | 不要用如此愚蠢的问题来烦我。             |
| <b>candle</b> ['kændl]<br>n. 蜡烛           | There are ten <b>candles</b> on his birthday cake.                         | 他的生日蛋糕上有十枝蜡烛。              |
| <b>choice</b> [tʃɔɪs]<br>n. 被选的人或物; 选择    | I don't like her, but if she's the people's <b>choice</b> I will obey her. | 我不喜欢她, 可是如果她是大家选上的, 我会服从她。 |
| <b>compound</b> [kəm'paʊnd]<br>v. 调配      | He <b>compounded</b> various substances into an effective medicine.        | 他把不同的物质调配成特效药。             |
| <b>constitute</b> ['kɒnstɪtju:t]<br>v. 组成 | Government should be <b>constituted</b> by the will of the people.         | 政府应由人们的意愿所组成。              |
| <b>deck</b> [dek]<br>v. 甲板                | It's very hot in the cabin; let's go on the <b>deck</b> .                  | 舱房内很热, 我们到甲板上去吧!           |
| <b>despise</b> [dis'paɪz]<br>v. 轻视        | Fools <b>despise</b> wisdom and instruction.                               | 傻子轻视智慧和教育。                 |

**Exercise 13.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Einstein's knowledge is so specialized that I cannot \_\_\_\_\_ it.
2. I am sorry to \_\_\_\_\_ you, but can you tell me the time?
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ light is not as strong as the sunlight.
4. Boys who tell lies and cheat at examinations are \_\_\_\_\_ by their classmates.
5. Seven specialists \_\_\_\_\_ the committee to investigate the accident.

**【解答】** 1. appreciate 2. bother 3. candle 4. despised 5. constituted

## 《第二部分》

|                                                      |                                                                                     |                   |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>distribute</b><br>[dis'tribju(:)t]<br>v. 分发       | The teacher <b>distributed</b> the examination papers to each student of the class. | 老师分发试卷给班上每一位同学。   |
| <b>educate</b> ['edju(:)keit]<br>v. 教育               | He was <b>educated</b> at a very good school when he was young.                     | 他年轻时在一所非常好的学校受教育。 |
| <b>enthusiastic</b><br>[in,θju:zi'æstik]<br>adj. 热心的 | My little brother is very <b>enthusiastic</b> about going to kindergarten.          | 我小弟非常热衷于上幼稚园。     |
| <b>explode</b> [iks'ploud]<br>v. 爆炸                  | The bomb fell on a field and <b>exploded</b> harmlessly.                            | 炸弹落在田野中爆炸,没有造成损伤。 |
| <b>fault</b> [fɔ:l]<br>n. 缺点                         | She loves him in spite of his <b>faults</b> .                                       | 他虽有缺点,她仍然爱他。      |
| <b>flood</b> [flʌd]<br>n. 水灾                         | The rain-storms caused <b>floods</b> in the low-lying parts of the town.            | 暴雨在此镇的低洼处造成水灾。    |
| <b>funeral</b> ['fju:nərəl]<br>n. 葬礼                 | Many friends attended the old lady's <b>funeral</b> .                               | 很多朋友参加那老妇人的葬礼。    |
| <b>grant</b> [grɑ:nə]<br>v. 准许<br>allow, give        | He was <b>granted</b> admission from Harvard University for the next fall semester. | 哈佛大学准许他明年秋季入学。    |
| <b>heap</b> [hi:p]<br>v.<br>堆                        | The mother <b>heaped</b> the child's plate with food.                               | 母亲将孩子的盘子装满食物。     |
| <b>immediate</b> [i'mi:djət]<br>adj. 紧急的             | When there is a fire, it is necessary to take <b>immediate</b> action.              | 发生火灾时,必须采取紧急的行动。  |

**Exercise 13.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Our requests for financial assistance were \_\_\_\_\_ by the committee.
2. Please send a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ reply to my letter.
3. He is always finding \_\_\_\_\_ with the way I do my hair.
4. The boiler \_\_\_\_\_ and many people were injured by the hot steam.
5. The postman had thirty letters to be \_\_\_\_\_ at houses all over the town.

【解答】 1. granted    2. immediate    3. fault    4. exploded  
5. distributed

### 《第三部分》

|                                             |                                                                          |                   |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>instance</b> ['instəns]<br>n. 例子         | Lincoln is an <b>instance</b> of a poor boy who became famous.           | 林肯是一个由穷孩子变成名人的例子。 |
| <b>jewel</b> ['dʒu:əl]<br>n. 珠宝             | The <b>jewel</b> in her ring is a diamond.                               | 她戒指上的珠宝是颗钻石。      |
| <b>lap</b> [læp]<br>n. 膝部                   | Mother holds the baby on her <b>lap</b> .                                | 母亲把孩子抱在膝上。        |
| <b>locate</b> [lou'keɪt]<br>v. 设置           | Where shall we <b>locate</b> our new office?                             | 我们的新办公 将设于何处?     |
| <b>marvel</b> ['mɑ:vəl]<br>n. 奇异之事          | Space travel is one of the <b>marvels</b> of our time.                   | 太空旅行是我们这时代的奇事之一。  |
| <b>minute</b> [mai'nju:t]<br>adj. 详细的       | He gave me a <b>minute</b> description of the structure of the building. | 他给我这栋建筑物构造的详细说明书。 |
| <b>mysterious</b> [mis'tiəriəs]<br>adj. 神秘的 | She had a <b>mysterious</b> telephone call last night.                   | 她昨晚接到一个神秘电话。      |



|                                               |                                                                          |                  |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>oblige</b> [ɔ'blaɪdʒ]<br>v. 强迫             | The students were <b>obliged</b> to do what the teacher had asked.       | 学生必须做老师所要求的事。    |
| <b>outbreak</b> ['autbreɪk]<br>n. 暴动          | The <b>outbreak</b> of disorder was put down by the police in two hours. | 警察在两小时内镇压了混乱的暴动。 |
| <b>participate</b><br>[pɑ:'tɪsɪpeɪt]<br>v. 参与 | Most of the students <b>participated</b> in the discussion.              | 大部分的学生参与了讨论。     |

**Exercise 13.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He gave me \_\_\_\_\_ instructions about how to do my work.
2. The airplane and television are among the \_\_\_\_\_ of science.
3. Television is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of improved communication facilities.
4. They were \_\_\_\_\_ to sell their house in order to pay their debts.
5. The disappearance of the ship still remains \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. minute 2. marvels 3. instance 4. obliged 5. mysterious

#### 《第四部分》

|                                        |                                                               |                    |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>perilous</b> ['perɪləs]<br>adj. 危险的 | It is always <b>perilous</b> to neglect our national defense. | 忽视国防始终都是危险的。       |
| <b>polite</b> [pə'laɪt]<br>adj. 客气的    | He was <b>polite</b> to everyone he met at the party.         | 他对每一个在宴会上遇到的人都很客气。 |
| <b>priest</b> [pri:st]<br>n. 牧师        | The <b>priest</b> will lead the church ceremony.              | 牧师将带领做礼拜仪式。        |
| <b>purchase</b> ['pɜ:tʃəs]<br>v. 购买    | They've just <b>purchased</b> a new house near the school.    | 他们刚在学校附近买了一栋房子。    |

|                                                                             |                                                                                                            |                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>n.</i> 购买<br>同 buy                                                       | They saved their money for the <i>purchase</i> of a house.                                                 | 他们存钱买房子。                     |
| <b>reference</b> [ˈrefrəns]<br><i>n.</i> 参考                                 | The journalist kept a card file of information on his desk for easy <i>reference</i> .                     | 新闻记者为方便参考,将资料的目录卡放在桌上。       |
| <b>request</b> [riˈkwest]<br><i>v.</i> 邀请<br><br><i>n.</i> 请求<br>同 ask, beg | He <i>requested</i> her to go fishing with him.<br><br>Your <i>request</i> for a ticket was made too late. | 他邀她一起去钓鱼。<br><br>你太晚来索取入场卷了。 |
| <b>ripe</b> [raɪp]<br><i>adj.</i> 成熟的<br>反 unripe                           | <i>Ripe</i> fruits taste good; unripe fruits usually taste bad.                                            | 成熟的水果味道不错;不熟的水果通常不好吃。        |
| <b>satisfy</b> [ˈsætɪsfaɪ]<br><i>v.</i> 使满意                                 | Nothing <i>satisfies</i> him; he is always complaining.                                                    | 没有东西能让他满意;他总是在抱怨。            |
| <b>security</b> [siˈkjʊərɪti]<br><i>n.</i> 安全                               | I helped the old lady cross the street in <i>security</i> .                                                | 我帮助那老太太安全过街。                 |
| <b>shortcoming</b><br>[ˈʃɔːtkʌmɪŋ]<br><i>n.</i> 缺点                          | He is a good man, but he has many <i>shortcomings</i> .                                                    | 他是一个好人,可是仍有许多缺点。             |

**Exercise 13.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Keep the dictionary on your desk for easy \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ a loan from the City Bank.
3. The apples are not \_\_\_\_\_ enough to eat.
4. In spite of my friend's \_\_\_\_\_, I still like him.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ his hunger with bread and milk.

|      |                 |              |         |
|------|-----------------|--------------|---------|
| 【解答】 | 1. reference    | 2. requested | 3. ripe |
|      | 4. shortcomings | 5. satisfied |         |

## 《第五部分》

|                                             |                                                                     |                   |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>smash</b> [smæʃ]<br>v. 打成粉碎              | The cup <b>smashed</b> when the girl dropped it.                    | 女孩掉落了杯子, 打得粉碎。    |
| n. 破碎声<br>同 crush                           | We heard a <b>smash</b> in the kitchen.                             | 我们听到厨房哗啦的破碎声。     |
| <b>spin</b> [spin]<br>v. 1. 纺               | There were hundreds of machines <b>spinning</b> cotton into thread. | 有几百部机器将棉纺成纱。      |
| 2. 旋转<br>同 rotate                           | The earth <b>spins</b> as it moves around the sun.                  | 地球在绕着太阳公转时也自转。    |
| <b>steady</b> ['stedi]<br>adj. 稳定的          | He is making <b>steady</b> progress at school.                      | 他在校的功课在稳定进步中。     |
| <b>stuff</b> [stʌf]<br>n. 材料<br>同 substance | The shoes were made of some <b>stuff</b> that looked like leather.  | 那鞋子是用一些象皮革的材料制成的。 |
| v. 塞入; 塞满<br>同 fill 反 empty                 | She <b>stuffed</b> the pillow with feathers.                        | 她将羽毛塞入枕头里。        |
| <b>sweat</b> [swet]<br>n. 汗                 | The old farmer wiped the <b>sweat</b> off his brow.                 | 那老农夫擦去额上的汗珠。      |
| v. 出汗                                       | We <b>sweat</b> when it is very hot.                                | 天很热时, 我们出汗。       |
| <b>terrible</b> ['terəbl]<br>adj. 可怕的       | The <b>terrible</b> storm destroyed many houses in the town.        | 可怕的暴风雨摧毁了镇上许多房子。  |
| <b>torch</b> [tɔ:tʃ]<br>n. 火把               | The Statue of Liberty holds a <b>torch</b> in her right hand.       | 自由女神像的右手握了一支火把。   |
| <b>turtle</b> ['tɜ:tl]<br>n. 龟              | <b>Turtles</b> live in fresh or salt water or on land.              | 龟生活在淡水、海水里或陆地上。   |

|                                   |                                                               |                    |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>victim</b> ['vɪktɪm]<br>n. 受害者 | They were the <i>victims</i> of a dishonest merchant.         | 他们是一个奸商的受害者。       |
| <b>welfare</b> ['wɛlfəə]<br>n. 幸福 | They did everything for the <i>welfare</i> of their children. | 他们所做的每一件事,都为孩子的幸福。 |

**Exercise 13.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ the trunk with old clothing.
2. He kept up a \_\_\_\_\_ speed on the road.
3. Climbing up the hill made us \_\_\_\_\_ much.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ fire filled the sky with flames.
5. He fell a \_\_\_\_\_ to the dagger of an assassin.

**【解答】** 1. stuffed 2. steady 3. sweat 4. terrible 5. victim

### 成果测验

**Exercise 13.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

1. (A)safety (B)protection (C)security (D)victim
2. (A)shortcoming (B)defect  
(C)victim (D)weakness
3. (A)perilous (B)risky (C)dangerous (D)steep
4. (A)ripe (B)enthusiastic (C)eager (D)anxious
5. (A)instance (B)fault (C)example (D)case
6. (A)grant (B)grand (C)allow (D)give
7. (A)study (B)teach (C)instruct (D)educate
8. (A)assemble (B)gather (C)participate (D)accumulate
9. (A)achieve (B)participate (C)perform (D)accomplish

\_\_\_ 10. (A) welfare (B) well being (C) happiness (D) outbreak

**【解答】** 1. D 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

**Exercise 13.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. 安全

(A) decoration (B) foundation (C) substance (D) security

\_\_\_ 2. 汗

(A) instance (B) sweat (C) spell (D) flood

\_\_\_ 3. 分发

(A) distribute (B) participate (C) smash (D) accumulate

\_\_\_ 4. 打成粉碎

(A) explode (B) spin (C) smash (D) heap

\_\_\_ 5. 火把

(A) marvel (B) torch (C) stuff (D) turtle

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B

**Exercise 13.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *esteem*

(A) admire (B) comprise (C) despise (D) annoy

\_\_\_ 2. *merit*

(A) benefit (B) defect (C) wonder (D) victim

\_\_\_ 3. *ripe*

(A) safe (B) fault (C) direct (D) raw

\_\_\_ 4. *drought*

- (A)flood (B)outbreak (C)sweat (D)well-being
- \_\_\_ 5. *perilous*
- (A)dull (B)safe (C)terrible (D)changing

【解答】 1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 13.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

- We took the v \_\_\_\_\_ ms of the storm into our house for the night.  
(受害者)
- He has worked for the w \_\_\_\_\_ e of the nation throughout his life.  
(幸福)
- The band is playing this song by r \_\_\_\_\_ t of the Queen. (请求)
- You will never a \_\_\_\_\_ e anything if you don't work hard. (获得)
- She was very careful in her c \_\_\_\_\_ e of friends. (选择)

【解答】 1. victims 2. welfare 3. request 4. achieve 5. choice

**Exercise 13.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- The problem *bothered* the scientists for many years.  
(A)annoyed (B)bored (C)amused (D)consolidated
- He gave me a *minute* description of his house.  
(A)important (B)precise (C)splendid (D)fundamental
- The operation was a *marvel* of medical skill.  
(A)success (B)jewel (C)merit (D)wonder
- He has many *shortcomings*, but I still love him.  
(A)pains (B)destiny (C)defects (D)outbreaks
- His office is *located* on the ground floor.

(A)compounded (B)situated (C)floated (D)constituted

\_\_\_6. She *heaped* the dirty clothes to the washing machine.

(A)placed (B)smashed (C)piled (D)achieved

\_\_\_7. All the teachers *took part* in the children's game.

(A)participated (B)discussed (C)requested (D)wanted

\_\_\_8. A *gem* is a precious stone.

(A)spell (B)marble (C)stuff (D)jewel

\_\_\_9. She *purchased* a new dress in her friend's shop.

(A)ordered (B)bought (C)sold (D)requested

\_\_\_10. The *courteous* boy gave the lady his seat on the bus.

(A)tired (B)polite (C)wholesome (D)jealous

**【解答】** 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. B

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 14

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

1. A *greedy* person wants to have everything as \_\_\_\_\_ as possible.  
(A) much (B) little
2. The boy took the \_\_\_\_\_ to the *pasture* every morning.  
(A) cats (B) cows
3. A *carpenter* makes things with \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) wood (B) stones
4. The hill is so *steep* that it is very \_\_\_\_\_ to climb.  
(A) easy (B) difficult
5. He was sent to \_\_\_\_\_ for his *crimes*.  
(A) hospital (B) prison

## △.解答△

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B

## 《第一部分》

|                                                      |                                                                                  |                          |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>actual</b> ['æktʃuəl]<br>adj. 实际的<br>回 true, real | The <b>actual</b> amount of money was not known although they knew it was large. | 虽然他们知道钱数很大, 不过仍不知道实际的数目。 |
| <b>ash</b> [æʃ]<br>n. 灰                              | Don't drop your cigarette <b>ash</b> on the carpet; use an ashtray.              | 不要把烟灰抖落在地毯上, 用烟灰缸。       |
| <b>beat</b> [bi:t]<br>v. 打<br>回 strike, hit          | The rain was <b>beating</b> against the windows.                                 | 雨点正打在窗上。                 |
| <b>bowl</b> [boul]<br>n. 碗                           | He ate only one <b>bowl</b> of rice and drank a glass of milk.                   | 他只吃了一碗饭, 喝了一杯牛奶。         |



|                                                                          |                                                                                          |                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>carpenter</b> ['kɑ:pɪntə]<br>n. 木匠                                    | A <b>carpenter</b> builds and repairs the wooden parts of houses, barns, or ships.       | 木匠建造和修补房屋、谷仓或船的木制部分。        |
| <b>circumstance</b><br>['sə:kəmstəns]<br>n. 情况                           | In no <b>circumstances</b> must a soldier leave his post without permission.             | 不论是什么情况, 士兵没有得到许可, 绝不能离开岗位。 |
| <b>conceive</b> v. 想象<br>[kən'si:v]<br>[think, imagine]<br>n. conception | Young children like to watch television; they cannot <b>conceive</b> of life without it. | 小孩子喜欢看电视; 他们无法想象没有电视的生活。    |
| <b>contain</b> [kən'tein]<br>v. 含有                                       | The book <b>contains</b> all the information you need.                                   | 这本书含有你需要的所有知识。              |
| <b>crime</b> [kraim]<br>n. 罪<br>④ offense                                | He was found guilty of committing a serious <b>crime</b> .                               | he 被发现犯有重罪。                 |
| <b>decorate</b> ['dekəreit]<br>v. 装饰<br>n. decoration                    | The streets were <b>decorated</b> with flags for the King's visit.                       | 由于国王来访, 街上悬挂旗帜作为装饰。         |

**Exercise 14.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ the girl with a stick.
2. The book \_\_\_\_\_ a good deal of useful information.
3. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ of your allowing a child of five to go on such a long journey alone.
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ the Christmas tree with shining balls and bells last year.
5. If you commit a \_\_\_\_\_ you must expect to be punished.

**【解答】** 1. beat 2. contains 3. conceive 4. decorated 5. crime

## 《第二部分》

|                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                   |                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>determine</b> [di'tə:mɪn]<br>v. 决定<br>n. determination                  | The size of your shoes is <b>determined</b> by the size of your feet.                                                                             | 你脚的大小决定鞋的尺寸。                            |
| <b>divide</b> [di'vaɪd]<br>v. 隔开                                           | The small river <b>divides</b> my land from his.                                                                                                  | 这条小河隔开我和他的地。                            |
| <b>elbow</b> ['elbou]<br>n. 肘                                              | He was watching television with his <b>elbows</b> bent, his chin in his hands.                                                                    | 他正弯着肘,用手托着下巴看电视。                        |
| <b>entrance</b> ['entrəns]<br>n. 入口                                        | The <b>entrance</b> to the cave had been blocked up.                                                                                              | 洞穴的入口已被堵塞。                              |
| <b>expense</b> [ɪks'pens]<br>n. 费用                                         | Most children are educated at public <b>expense</b> .                                                                                             | 大多数儿童靠公费受教育。                            |
| <b>feast</b> [fi:st]<br>n. 盛宴<br>同 banquet                                 | The king invited them to a <b>feast</b> last night.                                                                                               | 国王昨晚邀请他们参加盛宴。                           |
| <b>fog</b> [fɒg]<br>n. 雾<br>同 mist<br>adj. foggy                           | We often have had <b>fogs</b> on the southern coast during winter.                                                                                | 冬天在南海岸经常有大雾。                            |
| <b>furnish</b> ['fə:nɪʃ]<br>v. 1. 供给<br>同 supply, give<br>2. 装修<br>同 equip | No one in the class could <b>furnish</b> the right answer to the question.<br><br>The new hotel is finished, but it is not yet <b>furnished</b> . | 班上无人能对此问题提供正确的答案。<br><br>新旅馆已完工,可是尚未装修。 |
| <b>greedy</b> ['ɡri:di]<br>adj. 贪心的                                        | Don't be so <b>greedy</b> ! There is enough for everyone.                                                                                         | 不要如此贪心!每个人都够分。                          |
| <b>hesitate</b> ['hezɪteɪt]<br>v. 不愿;犹豫                                    | He <b>hesitated</b> to take such a big risk in his business.                                                                                      | 他不愿在事业上冒这么大的风险。                         |

**Exercise 14.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He got a deep wound on his right \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the sailor's greatest enemy.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ to the hotel was blocked with baggage so that no one could enter or leave.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ to take his side until I knew the whole story.
5. This hotel \_\_\_\_\_ clean sheets and towels every day.

**【解答】** 1. elbow 2. fog 3. entrance 4. hesitated 5. furnishes

《第三部分》

**impossible** (im'pəsəbl) Today it is *impossible* to cure 今天要完全治愈癌症是不可能的。  
*adj.* 不可能的 cancer completely.

**institution** *n.* 机构 Colleges and universities are 学院和大学都是教育机构。  
(,insti'tju:ʃən) educational *institutions*.

**journal** ('dʒə:nl) Both he and his wife write 他和他太太都为商业杂志执笔。  
*n.* 杂志 for a business *journal*.

**launch** (lɔ:ntʃ) The United States *launched* 美国昨天发射了一艘新的太空船。  
*v.* 发射 a new spaceship yesterday.

**loss** (lɒs) *Loss* of health is more seri- 丧失健康比损失财富要严重。  
*n.* 丧失 ous than *loss* of wealth.

☐ gain

*v.* lose

**match** (mætʃ) You can't *match* him in 在野生植物方面的知识,你不能和他相比。  
*v.* 1. 匹敌 knowledge of wild plants.

2. 相配

☐ become

The drapes of the room 房间的窗帘和地上的毯子相配。  
*match* the rug of the floor.

|                                                  |                                                                                 |                            |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>misfortune</b><br>[mis'fɔ:tʃən]<br>n. 坏运气; 不幸 | His failure in business was due not to <b>misfortune</b> , but to his mistakes. | 他生意上的失败不是因为运气差, 而是因为他犯了错误。 |
| <b>native</b> ['neitiv]<br>adj. 本国的              | The politician was never popular in his <b>native</b> country.                  | 那政客在本国从不受欢迎。               |
| <b>obvious</b> ['ɒbvɪəs]<br>adj. 明显的             | It is <b>obvious</b> that two and two makes four.                               | 二加二等于四是很明显的。               |
| <b>outstanding</b><br>[aʊt'stændɪŋ]<br>adj. 杰出的  | He is an <b>outstanding</b> pitcher because of his ball control.                | 他因控球好而成为杰出的投手。             |

**Exercise 14.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. One of the \_\_\_\_\_ animals of India is the tiger.
2. She always thought that the greatest of her \_\_\_\_\_ was that she'd never had any children.
3. The carpets should \_\_\_\_\_ the wallpaper.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ of so many ships worried the admiral.
5. The new ship was \_\_\_\_\_ as the crowd cheered.

**【解答】** 1. native 2. misfortunes 3. match 4. loss 5. launched

#### 《第四部分》

|                                                |                                                                       |               |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>pasture</b> ['pɑ:stʃə]<br>草地                | I saw many horses grazing on the <b>pasture</b> .                     | 我看见许多马在草地上吃草。 |
| <b>personality</b><br>[ˌpɜ:sə'næliti]<br>n. 人格 | She was elected class president because her good <b>personality</b> . | 她因品格好而被选为班长。  |

|                                                          |                                                                                                   |                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>port</b> ['pɔ:t]<br>n. 港口<br>同 harbor                 | New York and San Francisco are important <b>ports</b> of the United States.                       | 纽约和旧金山都是美国重要的港口。        |
| <b>privilege</b> ['privilidʒ]<br>n. 特权                   | The members of the club have the <b>privilege</b> of buying the football ticket at special rates. | 此会的会员有权以特价买到足球入场券。      |
| <b>puzzle</b> ['pʌzl]<br>n. 谜<br>同 riddle                | No one has yet succeeded in explaining the <b>puzzle</b> of how life first began.                 | 至今尚无人能圆满地解释生命最初是如何开始的谜。 |
| <b>region</b> ['ri:dʒən]<br>n. 区域<br>同 area              | New York is one of the <b>regions</b> of the United States.                                       | 纽约是美国的一个区。              |
| <b>resemble</b> (ri'zembl)<br>v. 相似                      | They <b>resemble</b> each other in shape but not in color.                                        | 它们的形状相似,可是颜色不同。         |
| <b>roast</b> [roust]<br>v. 烤                             | We need an oven to <b>roast</b> meat and potatoes.                                                | 我们需要一个炉子来烤肉和马铃薯。        |
| <b>savage</b> ['sævidʒ]<br>adj. 野蛮的<br>同 barbarous, wild | They carried guns to protect themselves from the <b>savage</b> tribes.                            | 他们带枪以保护自己,防备野蛮部落的攻击。    |
| <b>sentiment</b> ['sentimənt]<br>n. 情感<br>同 feeling      | The young girls preferred stories full of <b>sentiments</b> .                                     | 年轻女孩子较喜欢富有感情的故事。        |

**Exercise 14.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. In modern times there is less \_\_\_\_\_ and more of an equal chance in life for everyone.
2. There is only one \_\_\_\_\_ along this rocky coast.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ her sister in appearance but not in character.
4. Instead of frying, she likes to \_\_\_\_\_ the meat.

5. How to get all my clothes into one suitcase was a \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. privilege 2. port 3. resembles 4. roast 5. puzzle

### 《第五部分》

|                                                     |                                                                                      |                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>silence</b> ['saɪləns]<br>n. 安静<br>同 quietness   | Students are required to maintain <b>silence</b> in the library.                     | 学生在图书馆中被要求保持安静。     |
| <b>sob</b> [sɒb]<br>v. 啜泣<br>同 weep                 | She <b>sobbed</b> when she heard the bad news.                                       | 她听到坏消息时哭了。          |
| <b>spit</b> [spɪt]<br>v. 吐出                         | Please <b>spit</b> out your gum before you came into the class room.                 | 进入教室前,请把你的口香糖吐掉。    |
| <b>steep</b> [sti:p]<br>adj. 陡峻的                    | The hill was too <b>steep</b> for them to climb.                                     | 那座山太陡,他们不能爬。        |
| <b>substantial</b><br>[səb'stænʃəl]<br>adj. 相当的     | John has made a <b>substantial</b> improvement in his health.                        | 约翰在健康方面已有了相当大的进步。   |
| <b>swift</b> [swɪft]<br>adj. 急速的                    | Be careful not to fall down; the current of the river is <b>swift</b> .              | 当心别掉下去,河流很急。        |
| <b>thermometer</b><br>[θə'mɒmɪtə]<br>n. 温度计         | The doctor used a clinical <b>thermometer</b> to measure the patient's temperature.  | 医生用体温表测量病人的温度。      |
| <b>tower</b> ['taʊə]<br>n. 塔                        | You should visit the <b>Tower</b> of London when you have a chance to visit England. | 你有机会到英国时,应该游览一下伦敦塔。 |
| <b>typical</b> ['tɪpɪkəl]<br>adj. 代表性的<br>v. typify | Turkey is a <b>typical</b> food for the Thanksgiving Day dinner.                     | 火鸡是感恩节晚餐的代表性食物。     |

|                                     |                                                                                    |                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>virgin</b> ['væ:dʒɪn]<br>n. 少女   | The man decided to marry a <b>virgin</b> who lives in the house next to his uncle. | 那人决定娶一位住在他叔叔隔壁的少女。 |
| <b>whisper</b> ['hwɪspə]<br>v. 悄悄地说 | She <b>whispered</b> a few words at the corner.                                    | 她在角落悄声地说了一些话。      |

**Exercise 14.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ in the classroom, you may be punished by the teacher.
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ rise in living cost makes our life hard.
3. The building is a \_\_\_\_\_ 18th century church.
4. What the \_\_\_\_\_ is to temperature, the speedometer is to speed.
5. He has \_\_\_\_\_ evidence for his claim.

**【解答】** 1. spit 2. steep 3. typical 4. thermometer 5. substantial

### 成 果 测 验

**Exercise 14.6** 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. to *decorate* the wall with paintings  
(A) furnish (B) adorn (C) match (D) describe
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. a serious *offense*  
(A) crime (B) attack (C) expense (D) misfortune
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. a *port* in the southern coast  
(A) island (B) city (C) tower (D) harbor
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. an *outstanding* achievement  
(A) unknown (B) impossible (C) prominent (D) evident
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. a *swift* glance  
(A) secret (B) wild (C) slight (D) quick

- \_\_\_ 6. to *furnish* a new building  
(A) decorate (B) equip (C) finish (D) purchase
- \_\_\_ 7. to get invited to a *feast*  
(A) parlor (B) funeral (C) banquet (D) wedding
- \_\_\_ 8. a *substantial* improvement  
(A) great (B) actual (C) surprising (D) unexpected
- \_\_\_ 9. an *obvious* mistake  
(A) insignificant (B) serious (C) evident (D) real
- \_\_\_ 10. a difficult *puzzle*  
(A) riddle (B) work (C) language (D) battle

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. A

**Exercise 14.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_ 1. 特权  
(A) priest (B) character (C) privilege (D) journal
- \_\_\_ 2. 相似  
(A) waver (B) resemble (C) assume (D) match
- \_\_\_ 3. 野蛮的  
(A) savage (B) flat (C) native (D) impossible
- \_\_\_ 4. 代表性的  
(A) substantial (B) outstanding (C) genuine (D) typical
- \_\_\_ 5. 费用  
(A) instance (B) loss (C) expense (D) reference

【解答】 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C



**Exercise 14.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. *noise*

(A) well-being (B) merit (C) luck (D) silence

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. *gain*

(A) crime (B) loss (C) virgin (D) misfortune

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. *contain*

(A) divide (B) conceive (C) spit (D) exclude

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. *misfortune*

(A) offense (B) feast (C) luck (D) welfare

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. *exit*

(A) entrance (B) include (C) encourage (D) gain

**【解答】** 1. D      2. B      3. D      4. C      5. A

**Exercise 14.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. It is o \_ \_ \_ \_ s that a blind man ought not to drive a car. (明显的)

2. The wooded r \_ \_ \_ \_ n will be transformed into a park. (区域)

3. There is no place for s \_ \_ \_ \_ ts in business affairs. (情感)

4. Tomorrow's weather will d \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ e whether we are to go or stay.  
(决定)

5. I h \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ e to ask you, but will you lend me some money? (不愿)

**【解答】** 1. obvious    2. region    3. sentiments    4. determine  
5. hesitate

**Exercise 14.10** 选出最适合句意的一个单词:

1. Scientists first \_\_\_\_\_ the idea of the atomic bomb in the 1930s.  
(A)contained (B)purchased (C)compounded (D)conceived
  
  2. It is the business of the police to detect \_\_\_\_\_ and of the law courts to punish criminals.  
(A)crimes (B)puzzles (C)losses (D)faults.
  
  3. The ribbon does not \_\_\_\_\_ with the hat.  
(A)resemble (B)match (C)appreciate (D)allow
  
  4. The cruel rider \_\_\_\_\_ his horse with a stick.  
(A)roasted (B)heaped (C)whispered (D)beat
  
  5. A large number of houses were burnt to \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)victims (B)misfortune (C)ashes (D)noises
  
  6. Before we judge a person's act, we must know all the \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)circumstances (B)expenses  
(C)puzzles (D)faults
  
  7. The king and his nobles celebrated the birth of his heir with a \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)bowl (B)benefit (C)sob (D)feast
  
  8. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to grow rice in the desert.  
(A)genuine (B)impossible (C)perilous (D)partial
  
  9. There are many \_\_\_\_\_ in our society such as churches, schools, hospitals, and prisons.  
(A)institutions (B)foundations (C)journals (D)regions
  
  10. He gave his friend the \_\_\_\_\_ of using his private library.  
(A)reference (B)security (C)privilege (D)expense
-

**【解答】** 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. B 9. A 10. C

**Exercise 14. 11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当词性,填入空格中:

1. *decorate* The \_\_\_\_\_ of the party were bright and cheery.
2. *determine* He has a firm \_\_\_\_\_ to do his best in the final examination.
3. *entrance* The thief \_\_\_\_\_ through a rear window last night.
4. *expense* The price of this radio is very \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *greedy* His \_\_\_\_\_ for money led him to steal a painting from the museum.

**【解答】** 1. decorations 2. determination 3. entered 4. expensive  
5. greed

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 15

## 预备测验

◎ 选出最适当的答案：

1. Dogs \_\_\_\_\_ to be *patted*.  
(A) like (B) hate
2. A *thirsty* person wants to have something to \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) eat (B) drink
3. Because of the \_\_\_\_\_ harvest of crops, there is a *scarcity* of food.  
(A) enough (B) poor
4. He was filled with *envy* at my \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) success (B) failure
5. *Expedition* is a \_\_\_\_\_ made for some special purpose.  
(A) journey (B) plan

△ 解答 △  
1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A

## 《第一部分》

|                                                          |                                                                                    |                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>additional</b> [ə'dɪʃənəl]<br>adj. 额外的<br>n. addition | Mother needs <b>additional</b> help in the kitchen when we have guests for dinner. | 晚餐有客人时, 母亲在厨房里需要额外的帮忙。    |
| <b>aspect</b> ['æspekt]<br>n. 方面                         | You must consider all <b>aspects</b> of this plan before we decide.                | 在我们决定前, 你必须把这计划的各个方面都考虑到。 |
| <b>beard</b> [biəd]<br>n. 胡子                             | My grandfather has a long <b>beard</b> on his chin and cheeks.                     | 祖父的下巴和脸颊上留着长胡子。           |
| <b>brass</b> [brɑ:s]<br>n. 黄铜                            | He has <b>brass</b> buttons on his jackets.                                        | 他的夹克上有黄铜扣子。               |

|                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>carve</b> [kɑ:v]<br>v. 雕刻<br>同 inscribe                                                                      | The picture was <b>carved</b> on the surface of wood.                                                                                                                                     | 那幅画被雕刻在木头的表面上。                              |
| <b>civil</b> ['sivl]<br>adj. 1. 公民的<br><br>2. 平民的<br>n. civilian                                                | The judge ordered that the prisoner should lose his <b>civil</b> rights.<br><br>The soldiers thought that it would be a long time before <b>civil</b> government would be re-established. | 法官决定这犯人应丧失公民权。<br><br>士兵们认为要在很久以后才能重建平民政府。  |
| <b>concern</b> [kən'sə:n]<br>v. 1. 关于<br><br>2. 关心<br>同 1. affect<br>同 2. interest                              | Don't trouble about things that don't <b>concern</b> you.<br><br>I am very much <b>concerned</b> about the future of this country.                                                        | 不要为无关的事烦恼。<br><br>我非常关心这个国家的前途。             |
| <b>contest</b> ['kɒntest]<br>n. 竞赛<br>同 competition, struggle, conflict<br><br>[kən'test]<br>v. 争斗<br>同 compete | The <b>contest</b> between France and England for North America ended in victory for England.<br><br>The blackbirds <b>contested</b> with one another for nesting territory.              | 法国和英国争夺北美的竞赛, 结果英国胜利。<br><br>山鸟鸟为筑巢的地点互相争斗。 |
| <b>critical</b> ['kritikəl]<br>adj. 1. 吹毛求疵的<br>同 faultfinding<br><br>2. 危急的                                    | I don't like people who are too <b>critical</b> about everything.<br><br>His condition is reported as being very <b>critical</b> .                                                        | 我不喜欢对每件事都太吹毛求疵的人。<br><br>有人报导他的情况非常危急。      |
| <b>decrease</b> [di:'kri:s]<br>v. 减少<br>同 increase                                                              | The workmen want to <b>decrease</b> the number of working hours and to increase pay.                                                                                                      | 工人们要求减少工作时间, 增加工资。                          |

**Exercise 15.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ himself about the health of his aged patient.
2. Government must protect the \_\_\_\_\_ rights of its citizens.
3. If you really understand the difficulties of the government, you wouldn't be so \_\_\_\_\_ of its policy.
4. John no longer wears a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is made by mixing copper and zinc.

【解答】 1. concerned 2. civil 3 critical 4. beard 5. Brass

### 《第二部分》

|                                                                  |                                                                        |                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>device</b> [di'vais]<br>n. 1. 装置<br>同 design                  | He invented a <b>device</b> for automatically lighting a gas stove.    | 他发明一种自动点煤气炉的装置。       |
| 2. 策略<br>同 method                                                | The child's tears were a <b>device</b> to get attention.               | 孩子的眼泪是引起注意的一种策略。      |
| <b>divine</b> [di'vain]<br>adj. 神的;非凡的                           | To err is human, To forgive is <b>divine</b> .                         | 犯错是人之常情,宽恕是超凡的。       |
| <b>election</b> [i'lekʃən]<br>n. 选举<br>v. elect<br>adj. elective | The <b>election</b> results will be broadcast tonight.                 | 今晚将会广播选举结果。           |
| <b>envy</b> ['envi]<br>n. 被羡慕的东西<br>adj. envious                 | The boy's new bicycle was an object of <b>envy</b> to all his friends. | 那男孩的新脚踏车,是他所有朋友羡慕的东西。 |
| <b>expedition</b><br>[ˌeksipi'diʃən]<br>n. 探险;探险队                | He was a member of the Everest <b>Expedition</b> .                     | 他是埃弗勒斯峰探险队的队员。        |

|                                                                  |                                                                                                       |                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>feature</b> ['fi:tʃə]<br>n. 特色<br>同 characteristic            | The main <i>features</i> of Southern California are the warm climate and the beautiful scenery.       | 南加州的主要特色是暖和的气候及美丽的风景。      |
| <b>folly</b> ['fɒli]<br>n. 愚蠢; 愚行<br>同 foolishness<br>同 sagacity | After one year at the university he gave up his studies; it was an act of the greatest <i>folly</i> . | 他在那所大学一年后, 放弃求学, 这是最愚蠢的行为。 |
| <b>fury</b> ['fjuəri]<br>n. 愤怒<br>同 anger, rage                  | In his <i>fury</i> at being punished, he broke the teacher's favorite vase.                           | 他受惩罚, 一时愤怒将老师最心爱的花瓶打破。     |
| <b>grief</b> [gri:f]<br>n. 悲伤<br>同 sorrow                        | She went nearly mad with <i>grief</i> after the child died.                                           | 孩子死后, 她悲伤的几至疯狂。            |
| <b>hide</b> [haɪd]<br>v. 隐藏<br>同 conceal 同 reveal                | <i>Hide</i> it where no one else can find it.                                                         | 把它藏在没有人找得到的地方。             |

**Exercise 15.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The old man smiled sadly as he remembered the \_\_\_\_\_ of his youth.
2. He used a strange \_\_\_\_\_ to pick up the paper.
3. Some boys were full of \_\_\_\_\_ when they saw my new bicycle.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ the broken dish behind the table yesterday.
5. His failure to live a good life was a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to his parents.

**【解答】** 1. follies 2. device 3. envy 4. hid 5. grief

## 《第三部分》

|                                                                              |                                                                                                  |                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>impression</b> <i>n.</i> 印象<br>[im'preʃən]<br><i>v.</i> impress           | His speech made a strong <b>im-</b><br><b>pression</b> on the audience.                          | 他的演说给听众很<br>深刻的印象。            |
| <b>instruct</b> [in'strʌkt]<br><i>v.</i> 教导<br><i>n.</i> instruction         | We have one teacher who <b>in-</b><br><b>structs</b> us in geography, Eng-<br>lish, and history. | 我们有一位老师教<br>我们地理、英文还<br>有历史。  |
| <b>journey</b> ['dʒə:ni]<br><i>n.</i> 旅行                                     | Life is a long <b>journey</b> from<br>birth to death.                                            | 人生是个从出生至<br>死亡的漫长旅程。          |
| <b>lawn</b> [lɔ:n]<br><i>n.</i> 草地                                           | I spent the whole afternoon<br>mowing the <b>lawn</b> in the back<br>yard.                       | 我花了整个下午在<br>后院中除草。            |
| <b>lovely</b> ['lʌvli]<br><i>adj.</i> 可爱的                                    | She was wearing a very <b>love-</b><br><b>ly</b> dress at the party.                             | 她在宴会中穿了一<br>件非常可爱的衣<br>服。     |
| <b>material</b> [mə'tiəriəl]<br><i>n.</i> 材料<br>同 substance                  | When building <b>materials</b> cost<br>more, the price of houses in-<br>creases.                 | 建筑材料涨价, 房<br>屋价格也提高。          |
| <b>mislead</b> [mis'li:d]<br><i>v.</i> 欺骗<br><i>pp.</i> misled<br>同 misguide | Her appearance <b>misled</b> him;<br>he thought she was young,<br>but she wasn't.                | 她的容貌骗了他;<br>他以为她年轻, 其<br>实不然。 |
| <b>navy</b> ['neivi]<br><i>n.</i> 海军                                         | The <b>navy</b> defends the<br>country's shores and seas.                                        | 海军保卫国家的海<br>岸和海域。             |
| <b>occasion</b> [ə'keɪzən]<br><i>n.</i> 场合                                   | I wish to express my sorrow<br>on this <b>occasion</b> .                                         | 我希望能在此场合<br>表达我的哀伤。           |
| <b>overcome</b> [ˌouvə'kʌm]<br><i>v.</i> 克服<br>同 conquer, vanquish           | In order to succeed, you<br>must <b>overcome</b> any<br>hardships.                               | 为了成功, 你必须<br>克服任何困难。          |



**Exercise 15.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Our guide \_\_\_\_\_ us in the woods, and we got lost.
2. He is going to make a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ around the world.
3. Rubber is a widely used \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A birthday is not a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ for tears.
5. The child was \_\_\_\_\_ by weariness and slept deeply.

**【解答】** 1. misled 2. journey 3. material 4. occasion 5. overcome

#### 《第四部分》

|                                                                    |                                                                        |                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>pat</b> [pæt]<br>n. 轻拍                                          | The child gave the dog a <b>pat</b> on the head.                       | 那孩子轻拍狗的头。            |
| v. 轻抚<br>同 tap                                                     | She <b>patted</b> her hair to be sure that it was neat.                | 她轻摸头发,以确定整齐。         |
| <b>persuade</b> [pə'sweɪd]<br>v. 说服<br>n. persuasion<br>同 dissuade | I know I should study, but he <b>persuaded</b> me to go to the movies. | 我知道我应该念书,可是他说服我去看电影。 |
| <b>portable</b> ['pɔ:təbl]<br>adj. 可携带的                            | A <b>portable</b> typewriter can be easily moved from place to place.  | 手提打字机可轻便地到处携带。       |
| <b>procedure</b> [prə'si:dʒə]<br>n. 程序                             | The new secretary learned the <b>procedure</b> in the office.          | 新来的秘书学习了办公室内的程序。     |
| <b>quality</b> ['kwɒləti]<br>n. 质量                                 | <b>Quality</b> is more important than quantity.                        | 质量比数量更重要。            |
| <b>register</b> ['redʒɪstə]<br>v. 登记                               | You are required to <b>register</b> before the election.               | 选举前,你要先登记。           |

|                                      |                                                         |                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>resent</b> ['ri'zent]<br>v. 憎恶    | He strongly <b>resents</b> being called a fool.         | 他非常憎恶被人叫做傻瓜。    |
| <b>rod</b> [rɒd]<br>n. 竿             | She hung curtains on a <b>rod</b> .                     | 她把窗帘挂在衣竿上。      |
| <b>scarcity</b> ['skeəsiti]<br>n. 不足 | The <b>scarcity</b> of fruit was caused by the drought. | 由于干旱,造成水果不足。    |
| <b>series</b> ['siəri:z]<br>n. 连续    | A <b>series</b> of rainy days spoiled their vacation.   | 连日的雨天,破坏了他们的假期。 |

**Exercise 15.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ the promotion of his younger colleague to a rank above his own.
2. It took the whole afternoon to \_\_\_\_\_ his new car.
3. She wanted to buy an orange dress, but we \_\_\_\_\_ her that the blue one was more attractive.
4. He bought a \_\_\_\_\_ television for the trip.
5. An important \_\_\_\_\_ of steel is its strength.

**【解答】** 1. resented 2. register 3. persuaded 4. portable 5. quality

### 《第五部分》

|                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                |                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>silly</b> ['sili]<br>adj. 愚蠢的                                | It's <b>silly</b> of you to trust him.                                                                                                         | 你相信他的话,真是愚蠢。                              |
| <b>social</b> ['souʃəl]<br>adj. 1. 社会的<br>2. 联谊性的<br>n. society | Juvenile delinquency is a serious <b>social</b> problem in this country.<br><br>It was a <b>social</b> meeting, and no one discussed business. | 少年犯罪是这个国家一个严重的社会问题。<br><br>这是联谊会,没有人讨论业务。 |

|                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                        |                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>splendid</b> ['splendid]<br><i>adj.</i> 堂皇的                                       | The rich man lives in a <b>splendid</b> house over there.                                                                              | 那有钱人住在那边一栋堂皇的房屋内。                  |
| <b>steer</b> [stiə]<br><i>n.</i> 公牛<br>同 ox<br><br><i>v.</i> 驾驶<br>同 guide, navigate | The <b>steers</b> were fattened for market.<br><br>We <b>steered</b> the boat toward land.                                             | 养肥公牛是为销售。<br><br>我们将船驶向陆地。         |
| <b>substitute</b><br>['sʌbstɪtju:t]<br><i>v.</i> 代替                                  | We often <b>substitute</b> margarine for butter.                                                                                       | 我们经常以人造奶油代替奶油。                     |
| <b>swing</b> [swɪŋ]<br><i>v.</i> 摇摆                                                  | The big ape <b>swung</b> itself from branch to branch.                                                                                 | 那大猩猩在树枝间荡来荡去。                      |
| <b>thirst</b> [θɜ:st]<br><i>n.</i> 口渴                                                | The horse satisfied its <b>thirst</b> at the river.                                                                                    | 那匹马在河边痛饮解渴。                        |
| <b>trace</b> [treɪs]<br><i>n.</i> 踪迹<br><br><i>v.</i> 追溯<br>同 track                  | The police were unable to find any <b>trace</b> of the thief.<br><br>His family can <b>trace</b> its history back to the 10th century. | 警察找不到小偷的任何踪迹。<br><br>他的家族史可追溯至十世纪。 |
| <b>union</b> ['ju:njən]<br><i>n.</i> 联合<br>同 combination                             | The United States of America is a federal <b>union</b> of fifty-one states.                                                            | 美国是五十一州的联邦。                        |
| <b>visible</b> ['vɪzəbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 可见的                                          | The shore was barely <b>visible</b> through the fog.                                                                                   | 从雾中几乎看不见海岸。                        |
| <b>whistle</b> ['hwɪsl]<br><i>v.</i> 吹哨                                              | The policeman <b>whistled</b> for the automobile to stop.                                                                              | 警察吹哨要汽车停住。                         |

**Exercise 15.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Sorrow had left its \_\_\_\_\_ on his face.

2. The pilot \_\_\_\_\_ the ship for the harbor in the morning.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ red balls for blue to see if the baby would notice.
4. After running 5 miles we really had a \_\_\_\_\_.
5. He was \_\_\_\_\_ his arms as he walked.

**【解答】** 1. traces 2. steered 3. substituted 4. thirst 5. swinging

### 成 果 测 验

**Exercise 15.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词：

- \_\_\_1. (A)overcome (B)contest (C)conquer (D)vanquish
- \_\_\_2. (A)fury (B)anger (C)rage (D)folly
- \_\_\_3. (A)loss (B)lack (C)rarity (D)scarcity
- \_\_\_4. (A)foolish (B)stupid (C)ugly (D)silly
- \_\_\_5. (A)lovely (B)attractive (C)divine (D)beautiful
- \_\_\_6. (A)procedure (B)journey (C)excursion (D)travel
- \_\_\_7. (A)mislead (B)mistake (C)misdirect (D)misguide
- \_\_\_8. (A)splendid (B)brilliant  
(C)magnificent (D)substantial
- \_\_\_9. (A)suffering (B)grief (C)offense (D)sorrow
- \_\_\_10. (A)contest (B)competition (C)struggle (D)device

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. C 10. D

**Exercise 15.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_1. 可携带的

(A)portable (B)divine (C)actual (D)native

\_\_\_ 2. 登记

(A)contain (B)furnish (C)register (D)determine

\_\_\_ 3. 憎恶

(A)contest (B)resent (C)steer (D)resign

\_\_\_ 4. 胡子

(A)fury (B)lawn (C)series (D)beard

\_\_\_ 5. 印象

(A)impression (B)feature (C)device (D)quality

**【解答】** 1. A    2. C    3. B    4. D    5. A

**Exercise 15.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *sensible*

(A)civil (B)wise (C)critical (D)silly

\_\_\_ 2. *abundance*

(A)fury (B)scarcity (C)quantity (D)quality

\_\_\_ 3. *grief*

(A)pleasure (B)journey (C)folly (D)competition

\_\_\_ 4. *dissuade*

(A)persuade (B)conquer (C)conceal (D)concern

\_\_\_ 5. *hidden*

(A)divine (B)visible (C)social (D)additional

**【解答】** 1. D    2. B    3. A    4. A    5. B

**Exercise 15.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. You have only considered one a            t of difficulty, but there are many. (方面)
2. The furniture that the store sells is known for its good q            y. (质量)
3. D            e the dose of medicine when you feel better. (减少)
4. In our city we have an e            n for mayor every two years. (选举)
5. They lost their way in the desert and died of t            t. (口渴)

**【解答】** 1. aspect 2. quality 3. Decrease 4. election 5. thirst

**Exercise 15.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. He *patted* me on the shoulder.  
(A)persuaded (B)trimmed (C)tapped (D)spat
- \_\_\_ 2. The early settlers had many difficulties to *overcome*.  
(A)perform (B)decrease (C)conquer (D)understand
- \_\_\_ 3. The police *traced* the thief to his hiding place.  
(A)searched (B)tracked (C)vanquished (D)located
- \_\_\_ 4. They *carved* their names on the tree.  
(A)inscribed (B)described (C)inspired (D)wrote
- \_\_\_ 5. We *steered* the boat toward the port in the south.  
(A)hid (B)swung (C)spied (D)guided
- \_\_\_ 6. It is a *folly* to drink too much during the picnic.  
(A)puzzle (B)danger (C)foolishness (D)feast
- \_\_\_ 7. Janet is only too *critical* of Alice because she doesn't like her.  
(A)faultfinding (B)substantial (C)jealous (D)negligent
- \_\_\_ 8. She *hid* the toy in the drawer.

(A)hit (B)concealed (C)disclosed (D)put

\_\_\_ 9. Wet weather is a *feature* of life in Scotland.

(A)characteristic (B)quantity (C)occasion (D)device

\_\_\_ 10. It is no use trying to argue with you when you fly into a *fury* over the slightest thing.

(A)privilege (B)journey (C)rage (D)rarity

【解答】 1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. B. 9. A 10. C

本书由台湾学习出版社  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 16

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

- The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ be *stern* in the discipline of his pupils.  
(A) must not (B) must
- We visited a *gallery* of modern \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) art (B) cars
- If there is a *leak* in the roof, you will have trouble in the \_\_\_\_\_ sea son.  
(A) rainy (B) sunny
- The *mayor* is the person at the head of a \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) team (B) town
- He *split* the wood with \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) fire (B) an ax

△ 解答 △  
1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B

## 《第一部分》

|                                                       |                                                                                 |                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>admire</b> [əd'maɪə]<br>v. 喜欢; 钦佩<br>n. admiration | We all <b>admire</b> a brave boy, a beautiful picture, or a fine piece of work. | 我们都喜欢勇敢的孩子, 美丽的图画和好的作品。 |
| <b>assemble</b> [ə'sembl]<br>v. 集合                    | The students were <b>assembled</b> in the school hall.                          | 学生们在学校礼堂内集合。            |
| <b>beast</b> [bi:st]<br>n. 走兽                         | Lions, bears, cows, and horses are <b>beasts</b> .                              | 狮子、熊、牛和马都是走兽。           |
| <b>bravery</b> ['breɪvəri]<br>n. 勇敢<br>同 courage      | A young man of <b>bravery</b> saved the child from the burning house.           | 一个勇敢的年轻人将那孩子从着火的屋中救出。   |



|                                                                |                                                                                                                                                   |                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>castle</b> ['kɑ:sl]<br>n. 城堡                                | A king once lived in the mountain <b>castle</b> .                                                                                                 | 从前曾有一位国王住在山上的城堡中。                            |
| <b>claim</b> [kleim]<br>v. 请求                                  | Every citizen may <b>claim</b> the protection of the law.                                                                                         | 每一位公民都可请求法律保护。                               |
| <b>conclude</b> [kən'klud]<br>v. 推断<br>n. conclusion           | As he didn't get here at six, I <b>concluded</b> that he had been delayed.                                                                        | 由于他六点还没到此,我推断他被耽搁了。                          |
| <b>contract</b> [kən'trækt]<br>v. 1. 订约<br>2. 收缩<br>同 diminish | Our shop <b>contracted</b> with a local clothing firm for 100 coats a week.<br><br>Most metals <b>contract</b> when they cool.                    | 本店和市内的服饰店订约,每星期购买一百件外套。<br><br>大部分的金属在冷却时收缩。 |
| <b>crop</b> [krɒp]<br>n. 1. 农作物<br>2. 产量                       | Wheat, corn and cotton are the three main <b>crops</b> of the United States.<br><br>The drought made the potato <b>crop</b> very small this year. | 小麦、玉米和棉花是美国三种主要的农作物。<br><br>干旱使今年马铃薯的产量很低。   |
| <b>deed</b> [di:d]<br>n. 行为<br>同 behavior                      | Good <b>deeds</b> should be rewarded and evil <b>deeds</b> should be punished.                                                                    | 好行为应受奖励,坏行为应受惩罚。                             |

**Exercise 16.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ all the members of his family for the annual meeting last week.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ people who succeed in spite of difficulties.
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ to pay cash for the house just yesterday.
4. The injured man \_\_\_\_\_ compensation for damages at the trial yesterday.
5. His \_\_\_\_\_ do not always agree with his words.

【解答】 1. assembled 2. admire 3. contracted 4. claimed 5. deeds

《第二部分》

|                                                                  |                                                                                          |                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>devote</b> [di'vout]<br>v. 致力<br>n. devotion                  | He <b>devoted</b> his efforts to the improvement of the parks in the city.               | 他致力于市区公园的改进。            |
| <b>divorce</b> [di'vɔ:s]<br>v. 离婚<br>同 separate<br>n. 离婚         | He has been <b>divorced</b> for a year.<br><br>His wife asked him for a <b>divorce</b> . | 他已离婚一年。<br><br>他太太要求离婚。 |
| <b>elegant</b> [i'elɪgənt]<br>adj. 高雅的                           | The furnishings of the palace were <b>elegant</b> .                                      | 这皇宫的装饰很高雅。              |
| <b>equator</b> [i'kweɪtə]<br>n. 赤道                               | The United States is north of the <b>equator</b> .                                       | 美国在赤道的北边。               |
| <b>exist</b> [ɪg'zɪst]<br>v. 生存                                  | We cannot <b>exist</b> without air, food, and water.                                     | 我们没有空气、食物和水,就不能生存。      |
| <b>federal</b> ['fedərəl]<br>adj. 联邦制的                           | The United States has a <b>federal</b> government.                                       | 美国有一个联邦政府。              |
| <b>forbid</b> [fə'bid]<br>v. 禁止<br>同 prohibit<br>同 permit, allow | Smoking is <b>forbidden</b> in the crowded bus.                                          | 在拥挤的公共汽车上禁止吸烟。          |
| <b>gallery</b> ['gæləri]<br>n. 画廊                                | Many pictures were hung on the walls of the <b>gallery</b> .                             | 画廊墙上挂着许多画。              |
| <b>grind</b> [graɪnd]<br>v. 磨                                    | That mill <b>grinds</b> corn into meal, and wheat into flour.                            | 那家制粉厂将玉米磨成玉米粉,小麦磨成面粉。   |

|                           |                                                           |                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>improve</b> [im'pru:v] | She <b>improved</b> her handwriting by constant practice. | 她借着不断的练习,来改进她的书法。 |
| <i>v.</i> 改进              |                                                           |                   |
| <i>n.</i> improvement     |                                                           |                   |

**Exercise 16.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The mother \_\_\_\_ herself to caring for her sick child last week.
2. A(n) \_\_\_\_ is an imaginary circle around the middle of the earth at an equal distance from the North and South poles.
3. What happens to the soul when it is \_\_\_\_ from the body?
4. In the United States foreign policy is decided by the \_\_\_\_ government.
5. If her father had known it, he would have \_\_\_\_ the marriage.

**【解答】** 1. devoted 2. equator 3. divorced 4. federal 5. forbidden

### 《第三部分》

|                                                         |                                                                                                       |                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>instrument</b><br>[ˈinstrumənt]<br><i>n.</i> 用具;仪器   | A doctor's <b>instruments</b> must be kept clean.                                                     | 医生的用具必须保持清洁。                  |
| <b>junior</b> ['dʒu:njə]<br><i>adj.</i> 下级的<br>☐ senior | This teaching course is for <b>junior</b> officers.                                                   | 这门教学课程是为下级军官设的。               |
| <b>leak</b> [li:k]<br><i>n.</i> 漏洞<br><br><i>v.</i> 漏   | There is a <b>leak</b> in the roof.<br><br>The rain is <b>leaking</b> in through a crack in the roof. | 屋顶上有个漏洞。<br><br>雨正从屋顶上的缝隙漏进来。 |
| <b>lower</b> ['ləʊə]<br><i>v.</i> 降下                    | We <b>lower</b> our flag usually at six o'clock.                                                      | 我们通常在六点降旗。                    |

|                                                           |                                                                                                            |                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>mayor</b> [meə]<br>n. 市长                               | A <b>mayor</b> is the chief government official of a city or town.                                         | 市长是一市或一镇的主要政府官员。                  |
| <b>mistrust</b> [mis'trʌst]<br>v. 不信任<br>☐ believe, trust | He keeps his money at home because he <b>mistrusts</b> banks.                                              | 他把钱放在家里, 因为他不信任银行。                |
| <b>neat</b> [ni:t]<br>adj. 整洁的                            | The child was taught to put away her toys and clothes to keep her room <b>neat</b> .                       | 那女孩被教导要将玩具和衣服收拾好, 以维持房间的整洁。       |
| <b>occupy</b> ['ɒkjupai]<br>v. 充任<br>n. occupation        | Mr. Smith <b>occupies</b> an important position in the Ministry of Education.                              | 史密斯先生在教育部担任要职。                    |
| <b>overall</b> ['ouvəɔ:l]<br>adj. 所有的                     | The <b>overall</b> length of the table is six feet.                                                        | 那桌子全长六英尺。                         |
| <b>patch</b> [pætʃ]<br>n. 补丁<br>v. 缝补                     | She sewed <b>patches</b> on the elbows of his jacket.<br><br>The mother <b>patched</b> the boy's trousers. | 她将补丁缝在他夹克的肘弯处。<br><br>母亲缝补那男孩的裤子。 |

**Exercise 16.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空名内:

1. A drill is one of the important \_\_\_\_\_ used by dentists.
2. There is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in the paper bag that lets sugar run out.
3. He has thousands of books, and they \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of space.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ will lead the town meeting about taxes.
5. Her \_\_\_\_\_ handwriting is easy to read.

**【解答】** 1. instruments 2. leak 3. occupy 4. mayor 5. neat

## 《第四部分》

|                                                   |                                                                                                              |                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>phrase</b> [freiz]<br>n. 片语; 措辞                | He spoke in simple <b>phrases</b> so that the children understood him.                                       | 他用简单的语句, 使孩子们听得懂。                     |
| <b>portion</b> ['pɔ:ʃən]<br>n. 分得的财产              | His <b>portion</b> of the family property was the largest.                                                   | 他分得的家产最多。                             |
| <b>procession</b> [prə'seʃən]<br>n. 行列            | A funeral <b>procession</b> moved along the main street.                                                     | 送葬行列沿着大街走。                            |
| <b>quarrel</b> ['kwɔrəl]<br>n. 争吵                 | We have had a <b>quarrel</b> and don't speak to each other.                                                  | 我们争吵过后, 就不再和对方说话了。                    |
| <b>regret</b> [ri'gret]<br>n. 抱歉; 遗憾<br><br>v. 抱歉 | They said goodbye with great <b>regret</b> .<br><br>I <b>regret</b> to say that I cannot help you this time. | 他们非常抱歉地说再见。<br><br>我很抱歉地说, 这次我帮不上你的忙。 |
| <b>reserve</b> [ri'zə:v]<br>v. 保留                 | The seats are <b>reserved</b> for old and sick people.                                                       | 这些座位是留给老人和病人们坐的。                      |
| <b>role</b> [roul]<br>n. 角色<br>同 part             | His <b>role</b> in that movie proved his acting ability.                                                     | 他在那部片中的角色是他表演能力的证明。                   |
| <b>scare</b> [skeə]<br>v. 惊吓                      | The sudden noise <b>scared</b> her.                                                                          | 突然的声音吓了她一跳。                           |
| <b>serious</b> ['siəriəs]<br>adj. 严肃的             | He spoke about the problem in a <b>serious</b> way.                                                          | 他严肃地谈论那问题。                            |
| <b>silverware</b> ['silvəweə]<br>n. 银器            | Her <b>silverware</b> consists of knives, forks, spoons, a waterpitcher, and candlesticks.                   | 她所有的银器包括刀、叉、匙、一个水壶, 还有烛台。             |

**Exercise 16.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. They were \_\_\_\_\_ at the strange sound.
2. Raising money for our club is a \_\_\_\_\_ matter.
3. The first three rows of the hall are \_\_\_\_\_ for special guests.
4. The children had a \_\_\_\_\_ about the division of the candy.
5. The workers marched in \_\_\_\_\_ to the minister's office.

**【解答】** 1. scared 2. serious 3. reserved 4. quarrel 5. procession

### 《第五部分》

|                                                       |                                                                       |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>sole</b> [soul]<br>adj. 唯一的<br>同 single 反 multiple | He was the <b>sole</b> heir to the fortune when his rich aunt died.   | 他有钱的叔母死后,他是唯一的财产继承人。 |
| <b>n. 底部</b>                                          | The stone cut the <b>sole</b> of his foot.                            | 石头割伤了他的脚底。           |
| <b>split</b> [split]<br>v. 分配                         | The boys <b>split</b> the money into four shares.                     | 男孩们将钱分成四份。           |
| <b>stern</b> [stɜ:n]<br>adj. 严格的                      | He is very <b>stern</b> in his students' discipline.                  | 他对学生的纪律非常严格。         |
| <b>subtract</b> [səb'trækt]<br>v. 减去                  | <b>Subtract</b> 2 from 4, and the remainder is 2.                     | 四减二得二。               |
| <b>sword</b> [sɔ:d]<br>n. 刀;剑                         | Those who live by the <b>sword</b> shall perish by the <b>sword</b> . | 那些靠刀剑吃饭的人,终将死于刀剑之下。  |
| <b>thorough</b> ['θʌrə]<br>adj. 彻底的<br>同 complete     | You must give the horse a <b>thorough</b> cleaning every day.         | 你必须每天替马彻底清洗。         |

|                                                         |                                                                                                                   |                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>tradition</b> [trə'diʃən]<br>n. 传统<br>同 customs      | It is a <i>tradition</i> that women get married in longwhite dresses.                                             | 女人结婚时穿白色长礼服是一种传统。                  |
| <b>unite</b> [ju(:)'nait]<br>v. 联合                      | The common interests made the countries <i>unite</i> .                                                            | 共同的利益使得这些国家联合。                     |
| <b>vision</b> ['viʒən]<br>n. 1. 视力<br>同 sight<br>2. 洞察力 | The old man wears glasses because his <i>vision</i> is very poor.<br>We need a man of <i>vision</i> as president. | 那老人因为视力太差而戴眼镜。<br>我们需要一个有洞察力的人做会长。 |
| <b>widow</b> ['widou]<br>n. 寡妇<br>同 widower             | A <i>widow</i> is a woman whose husband had died, and who has not married again.                                  | 寡妇就是一个死了丈夫,而未再嫁的女人。                |

**Exercise 16.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. According to the old \_\_\_\_\_, Romulus was the founder of Rome.
2. Our club was \_\_\_\_\_ by the argument.
3. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ scoundrel.
4. The pen is mightier than the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Several firms were \_\_\_\_\_ to form one company.

**【解答】** 1. tradition 2. split 3. thorough 4. sword 5. united

## 成果测验

**Exercise 16.6** 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. a *thorough* defeat  
(A) severe (B) complete (C) critical (D) hidden
- \_\_\_ 2. *elegant* behavior  
(A) prompt (B) greedy (C) typical (D) graceful
- \_\_\_ 3. to *forbid* something  
(A) order (B) allow (C) prohibit (D) mistrust
- \_\_\_ 4. to *devote* one's life  
(A) admire (B) reserve (C) bother (D) dedicate
- \_\_\_ 5. a good *deed*  
(A) contest (B) impression (C) behavior (D) feature
- \_\_\_ 6. a medal for *bravery*  
(A) gallery (B) quarrel (C) courage (D) fighting
- \_\_\_ 7. a *serious* person  
(A) thoughtful (B) attractive (C) silly (D) thorough
- \_\_\_ 8. a *stern* parent  
(A) stupid (B) unique (C) chilly (D) strict
- \_\_\_ 9. to *esteem* someone  
(A) envy (B) admire (C) permit (D) despise
- \_\_\_ 10. to *claim* something  
(A) demand (B) assemble (C) occupy (D) contract

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. C 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. A



**Exercise 16.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. 寡妇

(A) bachelor (B) widow (C) widower (D) virgin

\_\_\_ 2. 传统

(A) impression (B) procession (C) expedition (D) tradition

\_\_\_ 3. 用具

(A) instrument (B) deed (C) patch (D) sword

\_\_\_ 4. 整洁的

(A) neat (B) stern (C) sole (D) obvious

\_\_\_ 5. 降低

(A) subtract (B) leak (C) lower (D) fall

**【解答】** 1. B      2. D      3. A      4. A      5. C

**Exercise 16.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *vulgar*

(A) ugly (B) single (C) elegant (D) swift

\_\_\_ 2. *cowardice*

(A) well-being (B) courage (C) scarcity (D) grief

\_\_\_ 3. *permit*

(A) discourage (B) lower (C) reserve (D) forbid

\_\_\_ 4. *combine*

(A) split (B) scare (C) consolidate (D) prohibit

\_\_\_ 5. *stern*

(A) abundant (B) mild (C) severe (D) thorough

**【解答】** 1. C      2. B      3. D      4. A      5. B

**Exercise 16.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. I shouted suddenly to s        e her. (惊吓)
2. How do the very poor e        t on such low wage?(生存)
3. Practice will i        e your handwriting. (改进)
4. We heard with r        t that you had failed the examination. (遗憾)
5. If you saw a man dressed in poor clothes, you might c        e that he had little money. (推断)

**【解答】** 1. scare 2. exist 3. improve 4. regret 5. conclude

**Exercise 16.10** 选出最适合句意的一个单词:

1. A foreign firm has \_\_\_\_ to build a new railway across Africa.  
(A)contracted (B)assembled (C)subtracted (D)occupied
2. He hits his gentle wife like a \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)feast (B)victim (C)beast (D)beard
3. \_\_\_\_\_ are better than words when people are in trouble.  
(A)Defects (B)Visions (C)Phrases (D)Deeds
4. It is wrong to \_\_\_\_\_ yourself only to amusement.  
(A)divorce (B)devote (C)claim (D)esteem
5. He did not like his daughter's boyfriend, and \_\_\_\_\_ her to meet his.  
(A)split (B)deducted (C)forbade (D)mistrusted
6. \_\_\_\_\_ is needed to try again after a defeat.  
(A)Quarrel (B)Folly (C)Bravery (D)Gallery
7. The wheat has been \_\_\_\_\_ down to good white flour.

(A)assembled (B)forbidden (C)devoted (D)ground

8. The air conditioner soon \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature of the room.

(A)lowered (B)improved (C)reserved (D)contracted

9. They \_\_\_\_\_ some of the corn to use as seed.

(A)occupied (B)scared (C)reserved (D)sucked

10. She did her best to fulfil her \_\_\_\_\_ as a mother.

(A)patience (B)role (C)tradition (D)crop

**【解答】** 1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. B

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 17

## 预备测验

◎ 选出最适当的答案:

1. When all *assist*, the job \_\_\_\_\_ be done quickly.  
(A) can (B) can not
2. An *insult* is an act or remark which \_\_\_\_\_ another's feelings.  
(A) flatters (B) injures
3. *Clay* is used to \_\_\_\_\_ bricks, or pots.  
(A) polish (B) make
4. Milk *spoils* quickly if it is not kept in a \_\_\_\_\_ place.  
(A) hot (B) cold
5. Fat ladies \_\_\_\_\_ to be *lean*.  
(A) want (B) hate

## △ 解答 △

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A

## 《第一部分》

|                                                 |                                                                    |                |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>admit</b> [əd'mit]<br>v. 允许<br>n. admittance | The servant opened the door and <b>admitted</b> me into the house. | 仆人开门, 允许我进入屋内。 |
| <b>assist</b> [ə'sist]<br>v. 帮忙                 | She <b>assisted</b> her mother with the housework.                 | 她帮着母亲做家务。      |
| <b>behave</b> [bi'heiv]<br>v. 举止                | He has <b>behaved</b> well to his wife and children as well.       | 他对妻儿的态度都很好。    |
| <b>cattle</b> ['kætl]<br>n. 牛                   | The farmer raises 1,000 head of <b>cattle</b> in his farm.         | 那农民在农场上养了一千头牛。 |

|                                                                |                                                                                                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>clay</b> [klei]<br>n. 粘土                                    | <i>Clay</i> is used for making pots, dishes and bricks.                                                          | 粘土用来制瓶、盘子和砖头。                         |
| <b>condemn</b> [kən'dem]<br>v. 谴责<br>同 censure, blame          | All the newspapers <i>condemned</i> the general for his speech attacking a friendly nation.                      | 将军攻击友邦国家的演说, 受到所有报纸的谴责。               |
| <b>contrary</b> ['kɒntrəri]<br>adj., adv. 相反的(地)<br>同 opposite | If you act <i>contrary</i> to the doctor's advice, you won't get well again.                                     | 如果你违反医生的劝告, 就无法再复原了。                  |
| <b>crude</b> [kru:d]<br>adj. 1. 未提炼的<br>2. 粗鲁的<br>同 impolite   | Oil and sugar are <i>crude</i> before being prepared for use.<br><br>His manners were <i>crude</i> at the party. | 油和糖在尚未准备使用前都是未经提炼的。<br><br>他在宴会上态度粗鲁。 |
| <b>defeat</b> [di'fi:t]<br>v. 打败<br>同 conquer                  | We <i>defeated</i> Lincoln High School in the baseball game yesterday.                                           | 昨天的棒球比赛, 我们打败了林肯中学。                   |
| <b>differ</b> ['difə]<br>v. 不同<br>同 disagree<br>n. difference  | The two brothers are like each other in appearance but <i>differ</i> widely in their tastes.                     | 这两兄弟的外貌相像, 可是嗜好却大大不同。                 |

**Exercise 17.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The children \_\_\_\_\_ badly; their manners were bad.
2. Only 100 boys are \_\_\_\_\_ to the school every year.
3. If we had snow in summer, it would be \_\_\_\_\_ to all experience.
4. In the last class, my answer to the arithmetic problem \_\_\_\_\_ from hers.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ the enemy and was raised to the rank of general as a reward.

【解答】 1. behaved 2. admitted 3. contrary 4. differed 5. defeated

《第二部分》

|                                                               |                                                                                                                                              |                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>doll</b> [dɒl]<br>n. 洋娃娃                                   | My granddaughter is as pretty as a little <b>doll</b> .                                                                                      | 我的孙女象小洋娃娃一样美。                     |
| <b>elementary</b><br>[ˌeli'mentəri]<br>adj. 基本的<br>n. element | The <b>elementary</b> principles of mathematics are taught in the lower grades at school.                                                    | 学校低年级教数学的基本原理。                    |
| <b>equip</b> [i'kwɪp]<br>v. 装备                                | Is the ship fully <b>equipped</b> for its voyage?                                                                                            | 这条船已为出航装备好了吗?                     |
| <b>exhibit</b> [ɪg'zɪbɪt]<br>v. 表现                            | Our men <b>exhibited</b> great bravery in the battle.                                                                                        | 战役中,我方表现英勇。                       |
| <b>feed</b> [fi:d]<br>v. 喂食<br>pp. fed                        | She always <b>feeds</b> the baby with a spoon.                                                                                               | 她一向用汤匙喂婴儿。                        |
| <b>force</b> [fɔ:s]<br>n. 暴力                                  | The thief took the money from the old man by <b>force</b> .                                                                                  | 小偷用暴力从老人身上抢走钱。                    |
| <b>gallop</b> ['gæləp]<br>v. 疾奔<br><br>n. 匆促地进行               | The wild horse <b>galloped</b> down the hill.<br><br>She went through the work at a <b>gallop</b> , so it couldn't have been done very well. | 野马疾奔下山。<br><br>她仓促地做完工作,因而没有做得很好。 |
| <b>grip</b> [grɪp]<br>v. 抓住                                   | He <b>gripped</b> the boy by the arm.                                                                                                        | 他抓住男孩的手臂。                         |
| <b>hind</b> [haɪnd]<br>adj. 后部的                               | The <b>hind</b> wings of some insects are shorter than the fore wings.                                                                       | 有些昆虫的后翼比前翼短。                      |

|                          |                                    |                     |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>impulse</b> ['impʌls] | A sudden <i>impulse</i> of anger   | 他受到侮辱时,突然涌起一股愤怒的冲动。 |
| <i>n.</i> 冲动             | arose in him when he was insulted. |                     |

**Exercise 17.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ interest whenever you talk about dogs.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ the nail and pulled it out.
3. The horse rose on its \_\_\_\_\_ legs.
4. The boy found a cave and stepped in it under the \_\_\_\_\_ of curiosity.
5. The expedition was fully \_\_\_\_\_ with food, tents, medical and other supplies.

**【解答】** 1. exhibits 2. gripped 3. hind 4. impulse 5. equipped

### 《第三部分》

|                         |                                  |                   |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>insult</b> ['insʌlt] | To call a brave man a            | 把一个勇敢的人称作懦夫是一种侮辱。 |
| <i>n.</i> 侮辱            | coward is an <i>insult</i> .     |                   |
| (in'sʌlt)               | The man <i>insulted</i> me by    | 那男人叫我骗子来侮辱我。      |
| <i>v.</i> 侮辱            | calling me a liar.               |                   |
| 同offend                 |                                  |                   |
| <b>jury</b> ['dʒʊəri]   | The <i>jury</i> decided the man  | 陪审团判定这人有罪。        |
| <i>n.</i> 陪审团           | was guilty.                      |                   |
| <b>lean</b> [li:n]      | He <i>leaned</i> forward to hear | 他倾身向前听她说话。        |
| <i>v.</i> 倾身的           | what she said to him.            |                   |
| <i>adj.</i> 细瘦的         | Do you see a <i>lean</i> lady    | 你看到一位瘦瘦的小姐穿过这条街吗? |
| 同 slender               | walking across the street?       |                   |
| <b>loyal</b> ['lɔɪəl]   | As a <i>loyal</i> citizen, he    | 作为一个忠实的国民,他支持政府。  |
| <i>adj.</i> 忠实的         | supported his government.        |                   |

|                                                            |                                                                                                     |                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>meantime</b> ['mi:n'taim]<br>n. 其间; 当中时间<br>同 meanwhile | Her husband left at four and returned at seven, and in the <b>meantime</b> she wrote three letters. | 她的丈夫四点离开, 七点回来, 在此期间她写了三封信。 |
| <b>mixture</b> ['mikstʃə]<br>n. 混合                         | Green is a <b>mixture</b> of yellow and blue.                                                       | 绿色是黄色和蓝色的混合。                |
| <b>needle</b> ['ni:dl]<br>n. 针                             | Mother sewed the button on my coat with <b>needle</b> and thread.                                   | 母亲用针线将扣子缝在我的外套上。            |
| <b>occur</b> [ə'kə:]<br>v. 发生                              | The terrible car accident <b>occurred</b> last Friday.                                              | 可怕的车祸发生在上星期五。               |
| <b>overlook</b> [ˌouvə'lʊk]<br>v. 俯视                       | Our garden is <b>overlooked</b> by the neighbor's window.                                           | 邻人的窗口可俯视我们的花园。              |
| <b>path</b> [pɑ:θ]<br>n. 轨道; 路程                            | The moon has a regular <b>path</b> through the sky.                                                 | 月球在天空中有一定的轨道。               |

**Exercise 17.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Your refusal to believe my story is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to me.
2. This tobacco is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of three different sorts.
3. It had never \_\_\_\_\_ to me to say "thanks".
4. From our house on the hillside, we can \_\_\_\_\_ the whole city.
5. Grass has grown over the \_\_\_\_\_ through the woods.

**【解答】** 1. insult 2. mixture 3. occurred 4. overlook 5. path

#### 《第四部分》

|                                                |                                                                            |                   |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>physical</b> ['fizikəl]<br>adj. 1. 自然的; 物质的 | They study the <b>physical</b> features of the earth in the science class. | 他们在科学课上研究地球的自然特征。 |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|



|                                                            |                                                                                                                       |                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2. 身体的<br>☐ spiritual, mental                              | The doctor's examination showed that he was in excellent <b>physical</b> condition.                                   | 医生的检验显示, 他的身体情况良好。                |
| <b>positive</b> ['pɒzətɪv]<br>adj. 确实的<br>☐ unquestionable | We have <b>positive</b> knowledge that the earth moves around the sun.                                                | 我们确信地球绕着太阳转动。                     |
| <b>proclaim</b> [prə'kleɪm]<br>v. 宣布<br>☐ announce         | Many former colonies have <b>proclaimed</b> their independence.                                                       | 许多昔日的殖民地已宣布独立。                    |
| <b>queer</b> [kwɪə]<br>adj. 奇怪的                            | There was something <b>queer</b> about the way he walked.                                                             | 他走路的方式有点奇怪。                       |
| <b>reign</b> [reɪn]<br>n. 统治<br><br>v. 统治<br>☐ rule        | The queen's <b>reign</b> lasted more than fifty years.<br><br>He <b>reigned</b> over the small country for ten years. | 女王的统治持续了五十余年。<br><br>他统治那小国十年。    |
| <b>reside</b> [rɪ'zaɪd]<br>v. 1. 居住<br><br>2. 存在           | He has <b>resided</b> abroad for over ten years.<br><br>Her charm <b>resides</b> in her happy smile.                  | 他住在国外已十年多了。<br><br>她的魅力在于她快乐的微笑中。 |
| <b>rooster</b> ['ruːstə]<br>n. 公鸡                          | A <b>rooster</b> was leading many hens.                                                                               | 一只公鸡正带领着许多母鸡。                     |
| <b>scarf</b> [skɑːf]<br>n. 围巾                              | The girl wore a green <b>scarf</b> over her shoulders.                                                                | 那女孩披了一条绿色的围巾在肩上。                  |
| <b>servant</b> ['sɜːvənt]<br>n. 仆人                         | They have two <b>servants</b> , a cook and a maid.                                                                    | 他们有两个仆人, 一个厨子和一个侍女。               |
| <b>similarity</b> [ˌsɪmi'lærɪti]<br>n. 相似                  | Their differences are more noticeable than their <b>similarities</b> .                                                | 他们的不同处比相似处要明显得多。                  |

**Exercise 17.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. How much \_\_\_\_\_ is there between the two religions?
2. The ringing bells \_\_\_\_\_ the news of the birth of the prince.
3. The power to legislate \_\_\_\_\_ in the legislature.
4. A politician should be a \_\_\_\_\_ of the people.
5. The guard has \_\_\_\_\_ instructions not to admit anyone.

【解答】 1. similarity    2. proclaimed    3. resides    4. servant  
5. positive

《第五部分》

|                                               |                                                                                   |                    |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>solemn</b> ['sɒləm]<br><i>adj.</i> 隆重的     | We watched the <b>solemn</b> ceremony in the church.                              | 我们在教堂里观看隆重的仪式。     |
| <b>spoil</b> [spɔɪl]<br><i>v.</i> 破坏          | She <b>spoiled</b> the meat by burning it.                                        | 她把肉烧坏了。            |
| <b>stiff</b> [stɪf]<br><i>adj.</i> 硬的         | Leather shoes are usually <b>stiff</b> when they are new.                         | 新皮鞋通常很硬。           |
| <b>subway</b> ['sʌbweɪ]<br><i>n.</i> 地铁       | He always goes to work by <b>subway</b> .                                         | 他经常搭乘地铁上班。         |
| <b>syllable</b> ['sɪləbl]<br><i>n.</i> 音节     | There are two <b>syllables</b> in the word "button".                              | "button"这个词有两个音节。  |
| <b>thread</b> [θred]<br><i>n.</i> 线           | Nylon <b>thread</b> is stronger than cotton <b>thread</b> .                       | 尼龙线比棉线结实。          |
| <b>trademark</b> ['treɪdmɑ:k]<br><i>n.</i> 商标 | The registration and protection of <b>trademarks</b> are now provided for by law. | 如今,商标的注册和保护已有法律规定。 |

|                                                  |                                                                        |               |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>university</b><br>[ˌjuːniˈvɜːsiti]<br>; n. 大学 | Several new <b>universities</b> have been built in the last ten years. | 过去十年内建了几所新大学。 |
| <b>vocabulary</b><br>[vəˈkæbjʊləri]<br>n. 词汇     | A lot of reading will increase your <b>vocabulary</b> .                | 大量阅读能增进你的词汇量。 |
| <b>wilderness</b> [ˈwildənɪs]<br>n. 荒地           | Jesus went out into the <b>wilderness</b> to think alone.              | 耶稣走到荒地去独自思考。  |

**Exercise 17.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. She used silk \_\_\_\_\_ in sewing her dress.
2. He gave his \_\_\_\_\_ promise to defend his country.
3. A group of travellers were lost in the \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ of science has grown tremendously in the past 20 years.
5. A (n) \_\_\_\_\_ consists of several colleges, as of liberal arts, law, medicine, etc.

【解答】 1. thread    2. solemn    3. wilderness    4. vocabulary  
5. university

### 成果测验

**Exercise 17.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

1. (A) prohibit    (B) declare    (C) announce    (D) proclaim
2. (A) likeness    (B) similarity    (C) resemblance    (D) mixture
3. (A) hind    (B) fore    (C) back    (D) rear
4. (A) power    (B) strength    (C) bravery    (D) force
5. (A) admit    (B) blame    (C) condemn    (D) censure

- \_\_\_ 6. (A)queer (B)lean (c)unusual (D)strange  
 \_\_\_ 7. (A)grave (B)solemn (C)contrary (D)serious  
 \_\_\_ 8. (A)vanish (B)defeat (C)conquer (D)overcome  
 \_\_\_ 9. (A)untreated (B)raw (C)crude (D)stern  
 \_\_\_ 10. (A)exhibit (B)differ (C)display (D)show

**【解答】** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. B

**Exercise 17.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. 侮辱  
 (A)defeat (B)condemn (C)proclaim (D)insult  
 \_\_\_ 2. 大学  
 (A)college (B)university (C)vocabulary (D)mixture  
 \_\_\_ 3. 相反的  
 (A)contrary (B)crude (C)positive (D)loyal  
 \_\_\_ 4. 陪审团  
 (A)gallop (B)clay (C)jury (D)mayor  
 \_\_\_ 5. 俯视  
 (A)spoil (B)mistrust (C)overlook (D)regret

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C

**Exercise 17.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. *conceal*  
 (A)offend (B)exhibit (C)reside (D)disagree  
 \_\_\_ 2. *difference*

(A)path (B)esteem (C)similarity (D)courage

\_\_\_ 3. *physical*

(A)raw (B)stiff (C)elementary (D)mental

\_\_\_ 4. *respect*

(A)behavior (B)insult (C)proclaim (D)differ

\_\_\_ 5. *ordinary*

(A)queer (B)physical (C)positive (D)grave

\_\_\_ 6. *servant*

(A)regret (B)master (C)negative (D)impulse

**【解答】** 1. B 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. B

**Exercise 17.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. The i \_ \_ \_ \_ e of hunger compelled the proud man to go begging for bread. (冲动)
2. Cows, bulls, steers, and oxen are c \_ \_ \_ \_ e. (牛)
3. Will you please f \_ \_ \_ d my cat for me? (喂食)
4. You must b \_ \_ \_ \_ e well to your seniors. (举止)
5. The n \_ \_ \_ \_ e of the compass shows we are facing north. (针)

**【解答】** 1. impulse 2. cattle 3. feed 4. behave 5. needle

**Exercise 17.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. Where do you *reside* now?

(A)reserve (B)live (C)reign (D)exist

\_\_\_ 2. It had never *occurred* to me to think she was a widow.

(A)exist (B)behave (C)express (D)happen

\_\_\_ 3. He had a choice between the shorter or the better *path*.

(A)route (B)cock (C)subway (D)role

\_\_\_ 4. He wanted to be *loyal* to his firm as well as to his family.

(A)solemn (B)thorough (C)faithful (D)positive

\_\_\_ 5. The frightened boy *gripped* his mother's hand.

(A)contracted (B)ground (C)spoiled (D)seized

\_\_\_ 6. She *assisted* him in building the house.

(A)behaved (B)occupied (C)forbade (D)helped

\_\_\_ 7. What a *queer* story it is!

(A)unusual (B)interesting (C)old (D)silly

\_\_\_ 8. The heavy rain *spoiled* the crops.

(A)subtracted (B)ruined (C)improved (D)lowered

\_\_\_ 9. This paint brush is too *stiff* to use.

(A)lean (B)solemn (C)rigid (D)good

\_\_\_ 10. The child *exhibited* a bad temper at an early age.

(A)concealed (B)showed (C)spoiled (D)conquered

【解答】 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. B

## LESSON 18

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

1. Water becomes *solid* when it \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) freezes (B) boils
2. When a person is *exhausted*, he has \_\_\_\_\_ strength left.  
(A) much (B) little
3. Her best *garment* is the red \_\_\_\_\_ with lace.  
(A) dress (B) doll
4. It was *cruel* of him to make the donkey carry such a \_\_\_\_\_ load.  
(A) heavy (B) light
5. This machine is \_\_\_\_\_ because of the *defects* in it.  
(A) expensive (B) unsafe

△ 解答 △  
1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**advance** [əd'vɑ:ns]

n. 1. 前进

2. 进步

同 progress

There were so many people  
that our **advance** was slow.人太多, 因此前进  
速度很慢。We had made great **advances**  
in airplane design.我们在飞机的设计  
上进步很大。**assure** [ə'ʃuə]

v. 保证

n. assurance

同 guarantee,

convince

The captain **assured** the  
passengers that there was no  
danger.船长向乘客保证没  
有危险。

|                                                                         |                                                                                                                       |                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>biology</b> [bai'ɒlədʒi]<br>n. 生物学                                   | Specialists in <b>biology</b> study the origin and structure of plant and animal life.                                | 生物学专家研究动·植物生命的起源和构造。                             |
| <b>brilliant</b> ['briljənt]<br>adj. 1. 辉煌的<br>2. 有才气的<br>n. brilliance | We have had a week of <b>brilliant</b> sunshine.<br><br>Everyone likes to hear him; he is a <b>brilliant</b> speaker. | 我们有一星期阳光·明媚的好天气。<br><br>每个人都喜欢听他·说话;他是个有才·气的演说家。 |
| <b>cause</b> [kɔ:z]<br>n. 原因<br>同 reason                                | The flood last month was the <b>cause</b> of much damage.                                                             | 上个月的水灾是造·成许多灾害的原·因。                              |
| <b>colony</b> ['kɒləni]<br>n. 殖民地                                       | Canada and Australia used to be British <b>colonies</b> ; now they are self-governing.                                | 加拿大和澳洲过去·是英国的殖民地,·现在已自治了。                        |
| <b>conduct</b> ['kɒndəkt]<br>n. 行为<br>同 behavior                        | The children were rewarded for good <b>conduct</b> and punished for bad <b>conduct</b> .                              | 孩子们因行为好而·受奖励,因行为坏·而受惩罚。                          |
| <b>contrast</b> [kən'træst]<br>v. 比较                                    | <b>Contrast</b> these foreign goods with the domestic products.                                                       | 把这些外国货和本·国货比较一下。                                 |
| <b>cruel</b> ['kruəl]<br>adj. 残忍的<br>n. cruelty                         | The <b>cruel</b> master beat his slaves mercilessly with a whip.                                                      | 残忍的主人用鞭无·情地鞭打奴隶。                                 |
| <b>defect</b> [di'fekt]<br>n. 缺陷<br>adj. defective<br>同 shortcoming     | The car was unsafe because of a <b>defect</b> in its construction.                                                    | 这部车不安全,因·为构造上有缺陷。                                |

**Exercise 18.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ the hot climate of our country with the cold climate of another in the last class.
- He is much interested in plant and animal life; he will study \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_.



the university.

3. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a country or area under the control of a distant country and settled by people from that country.
4. We tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the nervous old lady that flying in an airplane was quite safe.
5. You are old enough to know the rules of \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. contrasted 2. biology 3. colony 4. assure 5. conduct

《第二部分》

|                                                             |                                                                              |                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>differentiate</b><br>[ˌdɪfə'renʃieɪt]<br>v. 区分           | Can you <b>differentiate</b> this kind of rose from the others?              | 你能区分这种玫瑰和他种的不同吗? |
| <b>domestic</b> [də'mestɪk]<br>adj. 国内的                     | Most newspapers publish both <b>domestic</b> and foreign news.               | 大部分报纸都刊载国内外消息。   |
| <b>embrace</b> [ɪm'breɪs]<br>v. 拥抱<br>同 hug                 | She <b>embraced</b> the pretty baby with great affection.                    | 她深情地抱着可爱的婴儿。     |
| <b>error</b> ['erə]<br>n. 错误<br>同 mistake<br>adj. erroneous | I failed my test because of <b>errors</b> in spelling.                       | 我因拼写错误而未通过考试。    |
| <b>exhaust</b> [ɪg'zɔ:st]<br>v. 使筋疲力竭                       | They were almost <b>exhausted</b> when they reached the top of the mountain. | 他们到山顶时,几乎筋疲力竭。   |
| <b>festival</b> ['festɪvəl]<br>n. 节日<br>同 celebration       | Every year the city has a summer music <b>festival</b> in August.            | 每年八月该市都举办夏季音乐节。  |

|                                                            |                                                                                                                                                 |                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>formation</b> [fə:'meɪʃən]<br>n. 形成<br>同 structure      | School life has a great influence on the <b>formation</b> of a child's character.                                                               | 学校生活对孩子的个性形成, 有很大影响。                    |
| <b>garment</b> ['gɑ:mənt]<br>n. 衣服                         | A new <b>garment</b> should be washed carefully.                                                                                                | 新衣服应该小心清洗。                              |
| <b>groan</b> [graʊn]<br>v. 呻吟<br>同 moan<br><br>n. 呻吟       | The wounded man lay there <b>groaning</b> , with no one to help him.<br><br>We heard the <b>groans</b> of the man who had fallen off the cliff. | 伤员躺在那里呻吟着, 无人救助。<br><br>我们听到那跌入断崖者的呻吟声。 |
| <b>hire</b> ['haɪə]<br>v. 1. 租; 雇<br><br>2. 雇用<br>同 employ | He <b>hired</b> a car and a man to drive it.<br><br>The storekeeper <b>hired</b> a boy to deliver groceries.                                    | 他租一辆并雇了一个人来驾驶。<br><br>店主雇用一名男孩送杂货。      |

**Exercise 18.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The nation is going to have a week of \_\_\_\_\_ in honor of the king's marriage.
2. The tired horse \_\_\_\_\_ under the heavy load.
3. The government urged the people to buy \_\_\_\_\_ goods, not foreign goods.
4. The two sisters met and \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
5. The climbing up the hill in an hour completely \_\_\_\_\_ us.

**【解答】** 1. festival    2. groaned    3. domestic    4. embraced  
5. exhausted

## 《第三部分》

|                                   |                                                                         |                        |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>incidental</b> [ˌɪnsɪ'dentl]   | Certain discomforts are <i>incidental</i> to the joys of camping out.   | 享受露营的欢乐时,难免也全有些不便之处。   |
| <i>adj.</i> 附带发生的                 |                                                                         |                        |
| <b>intelligent</b> [ɪn'telɪdʒənt] | All human beings are more <i>intelligent</i> than animals.              | 所有的人类都比动物聪明。           |
| <i>adj.</i> 聪明的                   |                                                                         |                        |
| <b>justice</b> ['dʒʌstɪs]         | Judges should have a sense of <i>justice</i> .                          | 法官应有正义感。               |
| <i>n.</i> 正义;公正                   |                                                                         |                        |
| <b>leap</b> [li:p]                | He <i>leaped</i> with joy at the good news.                             | 听到好消息,他高兴地跳了起来。        |
| <i>v.</i> 跳                       |                                                                         |                        |
| 回 jump                            |                                                                         |                        |
| <b>luck</b> [lʌk]                 | She had <i>luck</i> to win first prize.                                 | 她很幸运,赢得了头奖。            |
| <i>n.</i> 幸运                      |                                                                         |                        |
| <i>adj.</i> lucky                 |                                                                         |                        |
| <b>measure</b> ['meɪʒə]           | The tailor <i>measured</i> me for a new suit of clothes.                | 裁缝为我量身做一套新衣服。          |
| <i>v.</i> 测量                      |                                                                         |                        |
| <i>n.</i> measurement             |                                                                         |                        |
| <b>mock</b> [mɒk]                 | The naughty boys <i>mocked</i> the blind beggar.                        | 顽皮的孩子嘲笑瞎眼的乞丐。          |
| <i>v.</i> 嘲笑                      |                                                                         |                        |
| <b>negative</b> ['negətɪv]        | The unhappy man has a <i>negative</i> attitude toward life.             | 不快乐的人对生活采取消极的态度。       |
| <i>adj.</i> 消极的;否定的               |                                                                         |                        |
| ☐ positive                        |                                                                         |                        |
| <b>odd</b> [ɒd]                   | Life would be very dull without the <i>odd</i> adventures now and then. | 生活中若缺乏偶然的奇遇,将会变得非常无聊。  |
| <i>adj.</i> 奇特的                   |                                                                         |                        |
| 回 strange, unusual                |                                                                         |                        |
| <b>owe</b> [əʊ]                   | He <i>owes</i> his success to good luck more than to his ability.       | 他的成功与其说归功于他的能力,不如说是运气。 |
| <i>v.</i> 归功于                     |                                                                         |                        |

**Exercise 18.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. All men should be treated with \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ the room and found it was 20 feet long and 15 feet wide.
3. We must know that we \_\_\_\_\_ a great deal to our parents and teachers.
4. We must take precautions against dangers \_\_\_\_\_ to a soldier's life.
5. The sounds of a foreign language are always \_\_\_\_\_ to nonnatives.

**【解答】** 1. justice 2. measured 3. owe 4. incidental 5. odd

《第四部分》

|                                                   |                                                                               |                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>patience</b> ['peɪʃəns]<br>n. 耐心               | It needs great <b>patience</b> to teach little children.                      | 教育孩子需要很大的耐心。      |
| <b>physician</b> [fɪ'zɪʃən]<br>n. 医生<br>同 surgeon | The <b>physician</b> gave his sick patient some strong medicine.              | 医生给病人一些烈性药。       |
| <b>possess</b> [pə'zes]<br>v. 具有<br>同 own         | He didn't have much money, but he always <b>possessed</b> good health.        | 他没有许多钱,可是他身体一向很好。 |
| <b>profession</b> [prə'feʃən]<br>n. 职业            | He is preparing for the teaching <b>profession</b> .                          | 他准备从事教书的行业。       |
| <b>quit</b> [kwɪt]<br>v. 停止;辞职<br>同 cease, stop   | The doctor told his patient to <b>quit</b> smoking and drinking.              | 医生叫病人戒掉烟酒。        |
| <b>reject</b> [rɪ'dʒekt]<br>v. 拒绝<br>同 refuse     | He tried to join the army but was <b>rejected</b> because of his poor health. | 他想当兵,可是因健康不好而被拒绝。 |
| <b>resign</b> [rɪ'zain]<br>v. 辞职                  | The man <b>resigned</b> from his job because of illness.                      | 那人因病辞职。           |

|                                                              |                                                                  |                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>rotten</b> ['rɒtn]<br><i>adj.</i> 腐烂的<br>同 fresh          | The apples fallen on the ground will soon become <b>rotten</b> . | 掉到地上的苹果很快就会腐烂。 |
| <b>scatter</b> ['skætə]<br><i>v.</i> 撒播                      | The farmer <b>scattered</b> seeds on the field.                  | 农夫播种于田中。       |
| <b>severe</b> [si'viə]<br><i>adj.</i> 严厉的<br>同 strict, cruel | The man was given a <b>severe</b> punishment for stealing.       | 那人因偷窃而受到严厉的处罚。 |

**Exercise 18.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The cat watched the mouse hole with great \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He was \_\_\_\_\_ from the army because of his bad eyes.
3. There is a great social difference between business and other \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He was told to \_\_\_\_\_ ashes on the icy sidewalk.
5. She was forced to \_\_\_\_\_ her position as secretary of the club.

**【解答】** 1. patience 2. rejected 3. professions 4. scatter 5. resign

#### 《第五部分》

|                                                                        |                                                                                                                             |                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>sin</b> [sin]<br><i>n.</i> 罪恶<br><i>cf.</i> crime                   | Lying, stealing, dishonesty, and cruelty are <b>sins</b> .                                                                  | 撒谎、偷窃、不诚实和残忍都是罪恶。                 |
| <b>solid</b> ['sɒlɪd]<br><i>adj.</i> 固体的<br>同 firm<br><br><i>n.</i> 固体 | When water freezes and becomes <b>solid</b> , we call it ice.<br><br>At what temperature does water become a <b>solid</b> ? | 水变成固体时,我们称之为冰。<br><br>水在多少温度变成固体? |
| <b>spokesman</b><br>['spəʊksmən]<br><i>n.</i> 发言人                      | At the meeting the <b>spokesman</b> for the government gave us the President's views.                                       | 政府发言人在会议上告诉我们总统的意见。               |

|                                            |                                                           |                    |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>still</b> [stil]<br>adj. 寂静的            | The room was <b>still</b> at the end of his speech.       | 他的演说结束时, 整个房间寂静无声。 |
| <b>suck</b> [sʌk]<br>v. 吮吸                 | The baby <b>sucked</b> milk from its mother's breast.     | 婴儿吸食母乳。            |
| <b>symbolize</b> ['simbəlaiz]<br>v. 代表; 象征 | The red color <b>symbolizes</b> danger in many countries. | 红色在许多国家代表危险。       |
| <b>threat</b> [θret]<br>n. 威胁              | Your <b>threats</b> will not stop me from going.          | 你的威胁阻止不了我走。        |
| <b>traffic</b> ['træfik]<br>n. 交通          | The police control the <b>traffic</b> in large cities.    | 警察在大城市中管制交通。       |
| <b>volcano</b> [vɒl'keinou]<br>n. 火山       | A dormant <b>volcano</b> may explode at any time.         | 休眠火山可能在任何时间爆发。     |
| <b>wipe</b> [waip]<br>v. 擦                 | She <b>wiped</b> the dishes with a paper towel.           | 她用纸巾擦盘。            |

**Exercise 18.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The baby tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the orange juice through a straw.
2. That door is made of a \_\_\_\_\_ piece of wood.
3. He was the \_\_\_\_\_ for the workers in the strike against the factory owner.
4. An extinct \_\_\_\_\_ has ceased to be able to explode.
5. He asked the noisy children to be \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. suck 2. solid 3. spokesman 4. volcano 5. still

## 成果测验

**Exercise 18.6** 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. to *reject* one's suggestion  
(A) proclaim (B) resign (C) refuse (D) overlook
- \_\_\_ 2. an old *garment*  
(A) thread (B) costume (C) patch (D) gallop
- \_\_\_ 3. *groan* of a sick man  
(A) profession (B) regret (C) outbreak (D) moan
- \_\_\_ 4. *merciless* punishment  
(A) cruel (B) odd (C) crude (D) unusual
- \_\_\_ 5. *odd* behavior  
(A) dangerous (B) contrary (C) lean (D) strange
- \_\_\_ 6. my friend's *defects*  
(A) errors (B) insults (C) shortcomings (D) regrets
- \_\_\_ 7. to lose one's *patience*  
(A) justice (B) forbearance (C) courage (D) strength
- \_\_\_ 8. to *hire* someone  
(A) reject (B) admire (C) employ (D) hide
- \_\_\_ 9. to *laugh* at one's behavior  
(A) encourage (B) mock (C) mistrust (D) assist
- \_\_\_ 10. to *own* a house  
(A) possess (B) owe (C) hire (D) equip

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A

**Exercise 18.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. 行为

(A)threat (B)conduct (C)cause (D)error

\_\_\_ 2. 生物学

(A)biology (B)colony (C)surgeon (D)vocabulary

\_\_\_ 3. 拥抱

(A)owe (B)possess (C)assure (D)embrace

\_\_\_ 4. 节日

(A)profession (B)volcano (C)festival (D)gallery

\_\_\_ 5. 耐心

(A)error (B)patience (C)bravery (D)justice

**【解答】** 1. B      2. A      3. D      4. C      5. B

**Exercise 18.8** 找出一与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *merciful*

(A)stiff (B)incidental (C)cruel (D)motionless

\_\_\_ 2. *foreign*

(A)dangerous (B)strange (C)federal (D)domestic

\_\_\_ 3. *rotten*

(A)fresh (B)queer (C)neat (D)mild

\_\_\_ 4. *hire*

(A)quit (B)fire (C)scatter (D)continue

\_\_\_ 5. *withdrawal*

(A)advance (B)possess (C)exhaust (D)leap

**【解答】** 1. C      2. D      3. A      4. B      5. A



**Exercise 18.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词:每一格代表一个字母:

1. I obeyed her order but only under the t          t of punishment. (威胁)
2. I don't have the p                  e to hear your complaints again. (耐心)
3. The j                  e of these remarks was clear to everyone. (公正)
4. If you don't like your job, you may q          t. (辞职)
5. There is heavy t                  c on the street during the rush hours. (交通)

**【解答】** 1. threat 2. patience 3. justice 4. quit 5. traffic

**Exercise 18.10** 选出最适合句意的一个单词:

1. Carelessness is often the \_\_\_\_\_ of fires.  
(A) errors (B) cause (C) threat (D) consequence
2. In the elementary school there is often a prize for good \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) conduct (B) defect (C) servant (D) threat
3. He could not \_\_\_\_\_ green color from red one.  
(A) measure (B) symbolize (C) exhibit (D) differentiate
4. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ him that his child would recover from the illness.  
(A) refused (B) assisted (C) contrasted (D) assured
5. \_\_\_\_\_ was with us and we won easily in the baseball game.  
(A) Defect (B) Luck (C) Vision (D) Justice
6. Heat causes the \_\_\_\_\_ of steam from water.  
(A) mixture (B) scarcity (C) formation (D) profession
7. The thoughtless children \_\_\_\_\_ the speech of the new boy.  
(A) mocked (B) sucked (C) owned (D) owed
8. A dog \_\_\_\_\_ a keen sense of smell.  
(A) embraces (B) symbolizes (C) behaves (D) possesses

9. I \_\_\_\_\_ it to you that I am still alive.

(A)reign (B)hire (C)owe (D)own

10. A dove \_\_\_\_\_ peace, whereas a hawk \_\_\_\_\_ war.

(A)symbolizes (B)contrasts (C)assures (D)differentiates

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. A

**Exercise 18.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当词性,填入空格中:

1. *error* The facts are correct, but your conclusion is \_\_\_\_\_.

2. *brilliant* The diamond glowed with a pure white \_\_\_\_\_.

3. *measure* The \_\_\_\_\_ of individual intelligence is very difficult.

4. *incidental* The \_\_\_\_\_ has been forgotten for a long time.

5. *assure* The plumber gave us his \_\_\_\_\_ that he would fix the pipes tomorrow.

**【解答】** 1. erroneous 2. brilliance 3. measurement 4. incident  
5. assurance

## LESSON 19

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ sugar and flour at the *grocery*.  
(A)buy (B)make
2. If someone *neglects* his duty, he gives \_\_\_\_\_ attention to it.  
(A)much (B)little
3. A *cautious* driver never drives his car too \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)slow (B)fast
4. Food must be \_\_\_\_\_ well to be *digested* properly.  
(A)chewed (B)cooked
5. We built a new *fort* in the south to \_\_\_\_\_ people.  
(A)protect (B)carry

△ 解答 △  
1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A

## 《第一部分》

**advantage**

[əd'vɑ:ntidʒ]

n. 便利

He had the **advantage** of 他占了出生富家之  
being born into a rich 便。  
family.

**atmosphere** ['ætməsfiə]

n. 1. 空气

同 air

Most cities no longer have a 大部分都市不再有  
clear **atmosphere**. 清新的空气。

2. 气氛

There is an **atmosphere** of 乡间的气氛是平静  
calm and peace in the 而安宁的,与都市  
country that is quite 截然不同。  
different from the  
**atmosphere** of a big city.

|                                                                                |                                                                                                                                   |                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>broad</b> [brɔ:d]<br>adj. 广大的<br>同 wide                                     | Miss Smith, our English teacher, has <b>broad</b> experience with children.                                                       | 我们的英文教师史密斯小姐, 对儿童有丰富的经验。             |
| <b>cautious</b> ['kɔ:ʃəs]<br>adj. 谨慎的<br>n. caution                            | A <b>cautious</b> thinker does not believe things without proof.                                                                  | 谨慎的思想家不相信没有证据的事。                     |
| <b>color-blind</b><br>['kʌləblaɪnd]<br>adj. 色盲的                                | A <b>color-blind</b> man can't tell red from green.                                                                               | 有色盲的人无法分辨红绿。                         |
| <b>conference</b><br>['kɒnfərəns]<br>n. 会议                                     | Many international <b>conferences</b> have been held at Geneva.                                                                   | 在日内瓦已举行过多次国际会议。                      |
| <b>contribute</b><br>[kən'tribju(:)t]<br>v. 1. 有助于<br>2. 捐助<br>n. contribution | Honesty and hard work <b>contribute</b> to success and to happiness.<br>Each worker <b>contributed</b> a dollar to the Red Cross. | 诚实和工作努力有助于成功和幸福。<br>每一个工人捐助了一元给红十字会。 |
| <b>crush</b> [krʌʃ]<br>v. 压碎<br>同 smash, break                                 | Wine is made by <b>crushing</b> grapes.                                                                                           | 酒是将葡萄压碎而制成。                          |
| <b>defend</b> [di'fend]<br>v. 保护<br>n. defense<br>同 guard 反 attack             | When the dog attacked me, I <b>defended</b> myself with my stick.                                                                 | 那只狗攻击我时, 我用手杖保护自己。                   |
| <b>digest</b> [dai'dʒest]<br>v. 消化<br>n. digestion                             | If you rest for half an hour after a meal, you will <b>digest</b> your food more easily.                                          | 如果你饭后休息半小时, 食物较容易消化。                 |

**Exercise 19.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The director of the school is in \_\_\_\_ now; you can see him later.
2. It will be to your \_\_\_\_\_ to study Spanish before you visit Mexico.

3. Everyone was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ suggestion for the party.

4. His hat was \_\_\_\_\_ when the girl sat on it.

5. The fort cannot be \_\_\_\_\_ against an air attack.

【解答】 1. conference    2. advantage    3. contribute    4. crashed  
5. defended

## 《第二部分》

|                                                         |                                                                                           |                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>dot</b> [dɒt]<br>n. 点<br>同 point                     | We watched the ship until it became a mere <b>dot</b> on the horizon.                     | 我们看着船离去,直到它在海平面上成为一个点。 |
| <b>emergency</b><br>[i'mə:dʒənsi]<br>n. 紧急              | I keep a box of tools and a fire extinguisher in my car for use in an <b>emergency</b> .  | 我在车中放了工具箱和灭火器,以备紧急之需。  |
| <b>escape</b> [is'keip]<br>v. 逃脱<br>同 flee              | The soldier <b>escaped</b> from the enemy's prison.                                       | 那士兵从敌人的监狱中逃出。          |
| <b>executive</b> [ig'zekjutiv]<br>adj. 行政的              | The <b>executive</b> branch carries out the laws which have been made by the legislature. | 行政部门执行由立法机关制定好的法律。     |
| <b>fetch</b> [fetʃ]<br>v. 拿来                            | Please <b>fetch</b> me the dictionary from the study room.                                | 请替我去阅览室将字典拿来。          |
| <b>fort</b> [fɔ:t]<br>n. 炮台<br>v. fortify<br>同 fortress | They decided to build a new <b>fort</b> to protect inhabitants of that area.              | 他们决定建座新炮台,以保护该区的居民。    |

|                                                    |                                                                                                                        |                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>gasp</b> [gɑ:sp]<br>n. 喘息声                      | The policeman heard the <b>gasps</b> of a boy in the smoky room.                                                       | 救火员听到冒烟的房间里有个男孩的喘息声。                    |
| v. 喘气                                              | He <b>gasped</b> for air as he ran from the smoke-filled room.                                                         | 他喘着气从烟雾弥漫的房间里跑出来。                       |
| <b>grocery</b> ['grouəri]<br>n. 食品杂货店              | We buy our rice at the nearest <b>grocery</b> .                                                                        | 我们在最近的一家食品杂货店里买米。                       |
| <b>hollow</b> ['hələu]<br>adj. 1. 中空的<br>2. 凹陷的    | A tube or pipe is <b>hollow</b> , and therefore not heavy.<br><br>A starving person has <b>hollow</b> eyes and cheeks. | 筒或管是中空的, 因而不重。<br><br>挨饿的人, 其双眼和两颊是凹陷的。 |
| <b>inclination</b><br>[ˌɪnkli'neɪʃən]<br>n. 爱好; 倾向 | Most boys have a strong <b>inclination</b> for sports.                                                                 | 大部分男孩对运动有强烈的喜好。                         |

**Exercise 19.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- Please \_\_\_\_\_ me a clean handkerchief from my bedroom.
- The President of the United States is the head of the \_\_\_\_\_ branch of the government.
- This fire extinguisher is to be used only in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ the fire in the house by jumping out of the window when he smelled smoke.
- The horse and the rider moved further and further away until they became only a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in the distance.

**【解答】** 1. fetch 2. executive 3. emergency 4. escaped 5. dot

## 《第三部分》

|                                                           |                                                                                                                      |                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>intend</b> [in'tend]<br>v. 想; 打算<br>同 mean             | I <b>intended</b> to get up early, but forgot to set the alarm.                                                      | 我想早起, 可是忘了拨闹钟。                            |
| <b>keen</b> [ki:n]<br>adj. 1. 锐利的<br>同 sharp<br>2. 尖刻的    | Be careful with that knife. It's got a <b>keen</b> edge.<br><br>Like a knife, a woman's tongue is very <b>keen</b> . | 小心那把刀子, 它有锐利的锋刃。<br><br>女人的舌头象刀子一样, 非常尖刻。 |
| <b>leather</b> ['leðə]<br>n 皮革                            | His shoes are made of <b>leather</b> imported from England.                                                          | 他的鞋子是由英国进口的皮革制成。                          |
| <b>lumber</b> ['lʌmbə]<br>n. 木材                           | They bought some <b>lumber</b> to make their fence.                                                                  | 他们买了些木材造篱笆。                               |
| <b>mechanic</b> [mi'kænik]<br>n. 机械工                      | The automobile <b>mechanic</b> repaired my car.                                                                      | 汽车机械工修理我的车。                               |
| <b>mode</b> [moud]<br>n. 方式                               | He suddenly became wealthy, which changed his <b>mode</b> of life.                                                   | 暴富改变了他的生活方式。                              |
| <b>neglect</b> [ni'glekt]<br>v. 疏忽<br>同 disregard, ignore | Don't <b>neglect</b> writing to your parents at least once a month.                                                  | 不要疏忽写信给你的父母, 一个月至少一次。                     |
| <b>offend</b> [ə'fend]<br>v. 触怒<br>同 insult               | My friend was <b>offended</b> by the reporter's questions.                                                           | 我的朋友被记者的问题触怒。                             |
| <b>owl</b> [aul]<br>n. 猫头鹰                                | Most <b>owls</b> hunt at night and live on small animals.                                                            | 大多数猫头鹰夜间猎食, 并以小动物为食。                      |
| <b>pause</b> [pəʊz]<br>n. 中止; 停顿<br>同 stop                | During the radio program there were several <b>pauses</b> for advertisements.                                        | 广播节目因广告而中断数次。                             |

v. 踌躇

The dog **paused** for a moment when I called him. 当我叫那只狗时，它踌躇了一会儿。

**Exercise 19.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. A typewriter \_\_\_\_\_ is skilled in repairing typewriters.
2. After a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch, the man returned to work.
3. What I \_\_\_\_\_ is to finish this work before I go to bed.
4. She is wearing a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ belt.
5. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ cleaning your shoes when you go out.

【解答】 1. mechanic 2. pause 3. intend 4. leather 5. neglect

#### 《第四部分》

|                                                     |                                                                         |                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>pickpocket</b> ['pɪkpɒkɪt]<br>n. 扒手              | Most <b>pickpockets</b> usually work in crowds of people.               | 多数的扒手通常在人群中动手。     |
| <b>pot</b> [pɒt]<br>n. 瓶; 壶<br>同 jug                | Chinese usually keep soy sauce in a <b>pot</b> .                        | 中国人通常将酱油放在瓶中。      |
| <b>profit</b> ['prɒfɪt]<br>n. 利润<br>adj. profitable | This company makes great <b>profits</b> from manufacturing automobiles. | 这家公司从生产汽车中获得大量利润。  |
| <b>quiver</b> ['kwɪvə]<br>v. 颤抖<br>同 shake, vibrate | Her lips <b>quivered</b> like those of a child about to cry.            | 她的双唇颤抖着，如同要哭的孩子一般。 |
| <b>rejoice</b> [ri'dʒɔɪs]<br>v. 高兴                  | They <b>rejoiced</b> when they heard she was safe.                      | 他们听到她安全时，感到高兴。     |
| <b>resist</b> [ri'zɪst]<br>v. 抵抗<br>同 oppose        | The troops were no longer able to <b>resist</b> the enemy attack.       | 军队再也抵抗不住敌人的攻击。     |



|                                               |                                                        |              |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>rough</b> [rʌf]<br><i>adj.</i> 粗的          | The wall was made of <b>rough</b> stones.              | 此墙为粗石所造。     |
| <b>scent</b> [sent]<br><i>n.</i> 气味<br>同 odor | The hunting dogs followed the <b>scent</b> of the fox. | 猎犬跟随狐狸的气味追踪。 |
| <i>v.</i> 闻出                                  | A dog <b>scented</b> along the ground.                 | 狗闻着地上的气味前进。  |
| <b>sew</b> [sou]<br><i>v.</i> 缝               | The doctor <b>sewed</b> up the soldier's wound.        | 医生缝好那士兵的伤口。  |
| <b>sink</b> [sɪŋk]<br><i>v.</i> 下沉<br>同 float | The sun is <b>sinking</b> in the west.                 | 太阳正西下。       |
| <i>n.</i> 水槽                                  | She washed the dishes in the <b>sink</b> .             | 她在水槽中洗盘子。    |

**Exercise 19.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The ship was filled with water and it \_\_\_\_\_ at last.
2. There is some water at the bottom of the \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ in this business are not large.
4. The mother \_\_\_\_\_ over her son's success.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ road made the car shake.

**【解答】** 1. sank 2. pot 3. profits 4. rejoiced 5. rough

《第五部分》

|                                                         |                                                                             |                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>solution</b> [sə'lu:ʃən]<br><i>n.</i> 解答<br>同 answer | That problem was very hard; it took many hours to get its <b>solution</b> . | 那个问题非常难,要许多小时才能得到解答。 |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|

|                                                   |                                                                      |                           |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>spot</b> [spɒt]<br>n. 1. 污点                    | She has a paint <b>spot</b> on her white dress.                      | 她的白衣服上有个油漆污点。             |
| 2. 地点                                             | They are building their house at a beautiful <b>spot</b> .           | 他们在一个优美的地点建造他们的房子。        |
| <b>sting</b> [stiŋ]<br>v. 螫; 刺                    | Be careful or the bee will <b>sting</b> you.                         | 小心! 否则蜜蜂会螫你。              |
| n. 刺; 螫                                           | A bee has its <b>sting</b> in the tail.                              | 蜜蜂尾上有刺。                   |
| <b>suffer</b> ['sʌfə]<br>v. 遭受; 受苦                | During the war many people <b>suffered</b> from hunger.              | 战争中, 许多人遭受饥饿之苦。           |
| <b>sympathy</b> ['simpəθi]<br>n. 同情               | We feel <b>sympathy</b> for a person who is ill.                     | 我们同情生病的人。                 |
| <b>thrill</b> [θril]<br>n. 兴奋                     | She felt a <b>thrill</b> when she was kissed by a handsome pop star. | 当一个受欢迎的英俊男星亲吻她时, 她感到一阵兴奋。 |
| v. 兴奋                                             | She was <b>thrilled</b> with delight when the actor winked at her.   | 当男演员向她眨眼时, 她因喜悦而感到兴奋。     |
| <b>tragic</b> ['trædʒik]<br>adj. 悲惨<br>n. tragedy | There was a <b>tragic</b> accident on the highway yesterday.         | 昨天高速公路上发生一起悲惨的车祸。         |
| <b>up-to-date</b> ['ʌptə'deɪt]<br>adj. 最新的        | The hotel is furnished with <b>up-to-date</b> furniture.             | 这家旅馆具备最新式的家具。             |
| <b>volume</b> ['vɒljʊ:m]<br>n. 1. 书本              | Our school has a library of 100,000 <b>volumes</b> .                 | 我们学校拥有一所藏书十万册的图书馆。        |
| 2. 容积                                             | The storeroom has a <b>volume</b> of 4,000 cubic feet.               | 这储藏室的容积是四千立方尺。            |

|                                   |                                   |           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>wi(l)ful</b> ['wilful]         | The <b>wilful</b> child would not | 任性的孩子不管你  |
| <i>adj.</i> 1. 任性的                | listen to whatever you say.       | 说什么,他都不听。 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> stubborn |                                   |           |
| 2. 故意的                            | The police think that it was      | 警方认为那是蓄意  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> intended | a <b>wilful</b> murder.           | 谋杀。       |

**Exercise 19.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. We arrived at the very \_\_\_\_\_ where he was killed.
2. A bee \_\_\_\_\_ me on the neck when I was walking along the country road.
3. She was very generous to him, but she \_\_\_\_\_ for it when he ran away with all her money.
4. They expressed their \_\_\_\_\_ by sending flowers to her husband's funeral.
5. You can find what you want to know in the ninth \_\_\_\_\_ of the encyclopedia.

**【解答】** 1. spot 2. stung 3. suffered 4. sympathy 5. volume

### 成果测验

**Exercise 19.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

- |                      |             |               |                |
|----------------------|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| ___ 1. (A) ignore    | (B) neglect | (C) disregard | (D) suffer     |
| ___ 2. (A) crush     | (B) spoil   | (C) smash     | (D) break      |
| ___ 3. (A) blind     | (B) void    | (C) hollow    | (D) empty      |
| ___ 4. (A) sharp     | (B) acute   | (C) narrow    | (D) keen       |
| ___ 5. (A) method    | (B) fashion | (C) principal | (D) mode       |
| ___ 6. (A) fragrance | (B) odor    | (C) scent     | (D) atmosphere |
| ___ 7. (A) mean      | (B) escape  | (C) intend    | (D) plan       |

- \_\_\_ 8. (A)sting      (B)pierce      (C)resist      (D)prick  
 \_\_\_ 9. (A)solution      (B)advantage      (C)gain      (D)benefit  
 \_\_\_ 10. (A)quiver      (B)vibrate      (C)fetch      (D)shake

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C

**Exercise 19.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. 拿来  
       (A)crush      (B)pause      (C)gasp      (D)fetch  
 \_\_\_ 2. 同情  
       (A)mode      (B)scent      (C)sympathy      (D)atmosphere  
 \_\_\_ 3. 喘息  
       (A)gasp      (B)quiver      (C)rejoice      (D)suck  
 \_\_\_ 4. 食品杂货店  
       (A)garment      (B)grocery      (C)colony      (D)conference  
 \_\_\_ 5. 消化  
       (A)mock      (B)sew      (C)digest      (D)suck

**【解答】** 1. D      2. C      3. A      4. B      5. C

**Exercise 19.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. *dull*  
       (A)severe      (B)keen      (C)solid      (D)careful  
 \_\_\_ 2. *obey*  
       (A)defend      (B)escape      (C)rejoice      (D)resist  
 \_\_\_ 3. *attack*  
       (A)defend      (B)contribute      (C)scatter      (D)suffer

\_\_\_ 4. *float*

(A) neglect (B) oppose (C) sink (D) leap

\_\_\_ 5. *smooth*

(A) stubborn (B) rough (C) sharp (D) cruel

|             |      |      |      |      |      |
|-------------|------|------|------|------|------|
| <b>【解答】</b> | 1. B | 2. D | 3. A | 4. C | 5. B |
|-------------|------|------|------|------|------|

**Exercise 19.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. I should r \_\_\_\_\_ e to see you married to a good man. (高兴)
2. Plenty of fresh air can c \_\_\_\_\_ e to good health. (有助于)
3. It gave her quite a t \_\_\_\_\_ l to shake hands with the Princess. (兴奋)
4. Don't n \_\_\_\_\_ t to lock the door when you leave. (忽略)
5. I've made a mistake, though I didn't i \_\_\_\_\_ d to. (打算)

|             |           |               |           |            |           |
|-------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| <b>【解答】</b> | 1 rejoice | 2. contribute | 3. thrill | 4. neglect | 5. intend |
|-------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|------------|-----------|

**Exercise 19.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. The duty of a soldier is to *defend* his country.  
(A) resist (B) assure (C) guard (D) contribute
- \_\_\_ 2. He has a red *spot* on his gown.  
(A) stain (B) belt (C) pot (D) defect
- \_\_\_ 3. You always follow your own *inclinations* instead of thinking of our feelings.  
(A) conducts (B) profits (C) occupations (D) dispositions
- \_\_\_ 4. Many teachers don't like to use *up-to-date* textbooks in their classes.  
(A) odd (B) modern (C) old (D) interesting

- \_\_\_\_ 5. We should be *cautious* in crossing a crowded street.  
(A)careful (B)intelligent (C)quiet (D)weary
- \_\_\_\_ 6. The tree fell on the roof of a car and *crushed* it.  
(A)exploded (B)smashed (C)etched (D)touched
- \_\_\_\_ 7. He *paused* for a moment, then continued speaking.  
(A)sat (B)stood (C)shook (D)stopped
- \_\_\_\_ 8. I *quivered* with fear at the strange sound.  
(A)shook (B)escaped (C)stung (D)suffered
- \_\_\_\_ 9. The room was filled with the *scent* of flowers.  
(A)atmosphere (B)pot (C)feature (D)odor
- \_\_\_\_ 10. The senator was *offended* by the reporter's silly questions.  
(A)insulted (B)rejoiced (C)defended (D)rejected

【解答】 1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. A 9. D 10. A

## LESSON 20

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

- At last they *ceased* their quarrel. in other words, they \_\_\_\_ their quarrel.  
(A) began (B) stopped
- A man of *dignity* has a \_\_\_\_ character.  
(A) noble (B) dishonorable
- Man has *lungs* for \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) digestion (B) breathing
- This wood is too \_\_\_\_\_ to *kindle*.  
(A) wet (B) dry
- They *paved* the road with \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) concrete (B) bicycles

△ 解答 △  
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. A

## ~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

- adventure** [əd'ventʃə] A flight in an airplane is no longer such an **adventure** as it used to be. 坐飞机不再象过去一样是项冒险。  
n. 冒险
- attach** [ə'tætʃ] He **attached** a stamp on the envelope. 他将邮票贴在信封上。  
v. 贴上
- bitter** ['bitə] Good medicine tastes **bitter** to the mouth. 良药苦口。  
adj. 苦的
- broadcast** ['brɔ:dka:st] The President's speech was **broadcast** on radio and television all over the country. 总统的演说经由收音机和电视广播到全国。  
v. 广播

|                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                               |                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>cease</b> [si:s]<br>v. 停止<br>同 quit, stop                                              | They <b>ceased</b> their work for a few minutes to take a rest.                                                                               | 他们停止工作几分钟,以便休息。                       |
| <b>combine</b> [kəm'beɪn]<br>v. 1. 联合<br>同 separate, split<br><br>2. 化合<br>n. combination | The two countries <b>combined</b> their efforts against their enemy.<br><br>Chemists <b>combine</b> different elements to form new compounds. | 这两国联合力量以抵抗敌人。<br><br>化学家将不同的元素化合成化合物。 |
| <b>confess</b> [kən'fes]<br>v. 承认                                                         | He <b>confessed</b> that he had done wrong.                                                                                                   | 他承认做错。                                |
| <b>converse</b> [kən'vɜ:s]<br>v. 谈话<br>n. conversation                                    | I'd like to <b>converse</b> with my friends about interesting subjects.                                                                       | 我喜欢和朋友谈论有趣的话题。                        |
| <b>cultivate</b> ['kʌltiveɪt]<br>v. 耕作                                                    | The farmer <b>cultivated</b> his fields just before planting time.                                                                            | 在种植前,农民先要耕地。                          |
| <b>delay</b> [di'lei]<br>v. 延误<br>同 postpone                                              | The train was <b>delayed</b> because of heavy snow.                                                                                           | 火车因大雪而延误。                             |

**Exercise 20.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The music \_\_\_\_\_ suddenly when she turned off the radio.
2. It was a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ disappointment to him when he failed his examination.
3. Jean \_\_\_\_\_ that she had eaten all the cakes.
4. The accident last night \_\_\_\_\_ the train for two hours.
5. After a year of studying at the university, I feel that I can \_\_\_\_\_ with anyone about anything.



【解答】 1. ceased 2. bitter 3. confessed 4. delayed 5. converse

《第二部分》

|                                                         |                                                                                           |                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>dignity</b> ['digniti]<br>n. 高尚                      | A man's <i>dignity</i> depends not on his wealth but on what he is.                       | 一个人高尚与否不在于他的财富,而在于他的品格。        |
| <b>doubt</b> [daʊt]<br>n. 疑虑                            | All his <i>doubt</i> and uncertainty made him unhappy.                                    | 这一切的疑虑不决使他很不快乐。                |
| <b>emotion</b> [i'mouʃən]<br>n. 情感                      | Love, hate, joy, and fear are <i>emotions</i> .                                           | 爱、恨、喜、惧、都是情感。                  |
| <b>establish</b> [is'tæbliʃ]<br>v. 建造<br>同 found        | The university was <i>established</i> in 1850 by the government.                          | 这所大学是由政府在一八五〇年建造的。             |
| <b>excuse</b> [iks'kju:z]<br>v. 原谅<br>同 pardon, forgive | Please <i>excuse</i> me for opening your letter by mistake.                               | 请原谅我错拆了你的信。                    |
| <b>fiber</b> ['faɪbə]<br>n. 纤维                          | Nylon is one of the most popular man-made <i>fibers</i> .                                 | 尼龙是最受欢迎的人造纤维之一。                |
| <b>forthright</b> ['fɔ:θrait]<br>adj. 直率的<br>同 frank    | His <i>forthright</i> behavior shows that he is honest, but he seems rude to some people. | 他直率的态度说明他是诚实的,可是对有些人来说,他是不礼貌的。 |
| <b>gay</b> [geɪ]<br>adj. 快乐<br>同 merry<br>同 gloomy, sad | We were all <i>gay</i> at the thought of coming holidays.                                 | 我们一想到即将来临的假期,都很快乐。             |
| <b>guarantee</b> [,gærən'ti:]<br>n. 保证                  | We have a one-year <i>guarantee</i> on our new car.                                       | 我们的新车有一年的保证。                   |

v. 保证                      The merchant **guaranteed** 商人保证那质料不  
 回 warrant                  that the color of the material 会褪色。  
                                      would not fade.

**holy**['houli]                  Jerusalem and Mecca are 耶路撒冷和麦加是  
 adj. 神圣的                  **holy** cities.                  圣城。

**Exercise 20.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The speaker did not like the plan and made \_\_\_\_\_ objection to it.
2. The young people were \_\_\_\_\_ as they prepared the hall for a dance party.
3. Don't be anxious; he will come without \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I can offer my house and land as a \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The Bible and the Koran are \_\_\_\_\_ writings.

【解答】 1. forthright 2. gay 3. doubt 4. guarantee 5. holy

### 《第三部分》

**income**['inkəm]              The government tax on 政府对于收入所收  
 n. 收入                      **income** is called **income** tax. 的税,称为所得税。  
 回 expenditure

**interest**['intrɪst]            His two great **interests** in life 他一生有两大爱  
 n. 爱好;兴趣                are music and painting. 好;音乐和绘画。

**kindle**['kindl]                We tried to **kindle** the wood 我们想点燃木头,  
 v. 燃烧                      but it was wet and wouldn't 可是木头太湿不容  
                                      **kindle** easily.                  易着火。

**legal**['li:ɡəl]                Hunting is **legal** only in 打猎只有在某些季  
 adj. 合法的                  certain seasons. 节才是合法的。

**lung**[lʌŋ]                      That opera singer has good 那个歌剧手声音宏  
 n. 肺                            **lungs**. 亮。

|                                          |                                                                        |                       |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>medium</b> ['mi:djəm]<br>n. 媒体        | Television can be a <b>medium</b> for giving information and opinions. | 电视是传播信息和意见的媒体。        |
| <b>moderate</b> ['mɒdərit]<br>adj. 一般的   | It is a large house, but the garden is of <b>moderate</b> size.        | 那是一栋大房子, 可是花园却只有一般大小。 |
| <b>neighborhood</b> n.<br>附近 ['neibəhʊd] | She lives in the <b>neighborhood</b> of the mill.                      | 她住在制粉厂附近。             |
| <b>odor</b> ['ɒdə]<br>n. 气味              | Water has neither <b>odor</b> nor color.                               | 水无色无味。                |
| <b>pace</b> [peɪs]<br>n. 步调              | The old man can walk only at a low <b>pace</b> .                       | 那老人只能缓步行走。            |

**Exercise 20.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The whole \_\_\_\_\_ came to her birthday party.
2. The spark \_\_\_\_\_ the dry wood so we could make fire.
3. He has a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in collecting stamps.
4. There was a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of roses in the air.
5. At the time of the accident, the car was running at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ speed.

**【解答】** 1. neighborhood 2. kindled 3. interest 4. odor 5. moderate

#### 《第四部分》

|                                                 |                                                                      |                |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>pave</b> [peɪv]<br>v. 铺                      | Today most roads are <b>paved</b> with asphalt.                      | 今天大部分的道路都铺有柏油。 |
| <b>picturesque</b><br>[ˌpɪktʃ'resk]<br>adj. 如画的 | There was a <b>picturesque</b> old mill at the foot of the mountain. | 山脚下有个如画般的老磨坊。  |

|                                                          |                                                                  |                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>pour</b> [pɔ:]<br>v. 倒                                | She <b>poured</b> milk from the bottle into the glasses.         | 她将牛奶从瓶子倒入杯中。         |
| <b>progress</b> [ˈprɒɡres]<br>n. 进步                      | He is showing rapid <b>progress</b> in his studies.              | 他的学业正迅速进步中。..        |
| [prəˈɡres] *<br>v. 进展                                    | His work is <b>progressing</b> smoothly as we expected.          | 如我们所预期,他的工作正在顺利地进展。  |
| <b>quote</b> [kwout]<br>v. 引证                            | The judge <b>quoted</b> various cases in support of his opinion. | 那法官引证许多不同的案例来支持他的意见。 |
| <b>relate</b> [riˈleit]<br>v. 1. 叙述                      | We listened as he <b>related</b> his adventure.                  | 我们听他叙述他的奇遇。          |
| 2. 连接                                                    | It is difficult to <b>relate</b> these results to her mistake.   | 要将这些结果和她的错误连接起来是困难的。 |
| <b>resolve</b> [riˈzɒlv]<br>v. 决定<br>同 decide, determine | He <b>resolved</b> to do better work in the future.              | 他决定以后要更努力工作。         |
| <b>royal</b> [ˈrɔɪəl]<br>adj. 皇家的                        | The nobleman is a man of the <b>royal</b> family.                | 那贵族是皇室成员。            |
| <b>scheme</b> [ski:m]<br>n. 计划                           | Their <b>scheme</b> of building the road has failed.             | 他们筑路的计划已失败。          |
| v. 图谋                                                    | They <b>schemed</b> for the overthrow of the government.         | 他们图谋推翻政府。            |
| <b>situate</b> [ˈsitjueit]<br>v. 位于                      | The city is <b>situated</b> by the river.                        | 该市位于河旁。              |

**Exercise 20.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The building of the new school \_\_\_\_\_ quickly during the last summer.
2. The discovery of electricity \_\_\_\_\_ the way for many inventions.

3. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ to quit smoking and never do.  
 4. He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ from the Bible to support his beliefs.  
 5. The firehouse is so \_\_\_\_\_ that the fireman can easily reach all parts of the town.

【解答】 1. progressed 2. paved 3. resolve 4. quote 5. situated

### 《第五部分》

|                                           |                                                                                                            |                                  |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>somewhat</b> ['sʌmhwət]<br>adv. 有几分    | I was <i>somewhat</i> surprised to hear the bad news.                                                      | 我听到那坏消息，有点吃惊。                    |
| <b>spray</b> [sprei]<br>v. 喷上             | Jane was <i>spraying</i> green paint on the wall.                                                          | 珍正在将绿漆喷在墙上。                      |
| <b>stir</b> [stə:]<br>v. 搅动               | She <i>stirred</i> her coffee with a teaspoon.                                                             | 她用汤匙搅咖啡。                         |
| <b>suitable</b> ['sju:təbl]<br>adj. 适合的   | The park is a <i>suitable</i> place for a picnic.                                                          | 这公园是个适合野餐的地方。                    |
| <b>tale</b> [teɪl]<br>n. 故事<br>同 story    | Father likes to tell us <i>tales</i> of his boyhood.                                                       | 父亲喜欢告诉我们他少年时的故事。                 |
| <b>throat</b> [θrout]<br>n. 喉咙            | The murderer cut the old man's <i>throat</i> .                                                             | 凶手割断了老人的喉咙。                      |
| <b>tramp</b> [træmp]<br>v. 1. 行走<br>2. 践踏 | The soldiers <i>tramped</i> along the street.<br><br>Someone <i>tramped</i> on my toes on the crowded bus. | 士兵沿着街道行走。<br><br>拥挤的车上，有人踩了我的脚趾。 |
| <b>urge</b> [ɜ:dʒ]<br>v. 促使               | Hunger <i>urged</i> him to steal a piece of bread.                                                         | 饥饿促使他偷了一片面包。                     |
| <b>vow</b> [vau]<br>n. 誓言                 | All the men made a <i>vow</i> of loyalty to their leader.                                                  | 所有的人都立了誓言效忠领袖。                   |

|                              |                                                                           |                        |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| v. 立誓                        | They <b>vowed</b> vengeance against the oppressor.                        | 他们发誓向暴君复仇。             |
| <b>witch</b> [wɪtʃ]<br>n. 巫婆 | It was thought that <b>witches</b> generally used their power to do evil. | 一般认为,巫婆通常都使用她们的力量去做坏事。 |

**Exercise 20.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Choose the most \_\_\_\_\_ word for the blank in the sentence.
2. We have arrived \_\_\_\_\_ late, I'm afraid.
3. He was \_\_\_\_\_ by the doctor to rest more.
4. On returning from the war, he told us \_\_\_\_\_ of fear and sadness.
5. She felt so homesick that she \_\_\_\_\_ never to leave home again when she was back home.

**【解答】** 1. suitable 2. somewhat 3. urged 4. tales 5. vowed

### 成果测验

**Exercise 20.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词:

1. to *cite* the Bible  
(A) read (B) attack (C) cover (D) quote
2. an unpleasant *odor*  
(A) procedure (B) emotion (C) smell (D) stain
3. a *vow* of loyalty  
(A) oath (B) plan (C) break (D) doubt
4. to *cease* doing something  
(A) begin (B) quit (C) start (D) delay

\_\_\_ 5. to *converse* with someone

- (A)fight (B)talk (C)contract (D)rejoice

\_\_\_ 6. to *establish* a school

- (A)found (B)mistrust (C)destroy (D)guarantee

\_\_\_ 7. to *delay* something

- (A)defend (B)decide (C)claim (D)postpone

\_\_\_ 8. *forthright* behavior

- (A)stubborn (B)cruel (C)candid (D)merry

\_\_\_ 9. a *holy* cup

- (A)strange (B)sacred (C)hollow (D)solid

\_\_\_ 10. in the *neighborhood*

- (A)place (B)medium (C)wood (D)vicinity

**【解答】** 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. D

**Exercise 20.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

\_\_\_ 1. 承认

- (A)confess (B)converse (C)relate (D)forgive

\_\_\_ 2. 合法的

- (A)royal (B)executive (C)legal (D)incidental

\_\_\_ 3. 气味

- (A)sorrow (B)anger (C)odor (D)emotion

\_\_\_ 4. 决定

- (A)quote (B)resolve (C)defer (D)resist

\_\_\_ 5. 快乐的

- (A)gay (B)dull (C)gloomy (D)acute

**【解答】** 1. A      2. C      3. C      4. B      5. A

**Exercise 20.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *continue*

(A) combine (B) pour (C) cease (D) contribute

\_\_\_ 2. *boredom*

(A) reason (B) interest (C) progress (D) dignity

\_\_\_ 3. *moderate*

(A) hollow (B) legal (C) cautious (D) excessive

\_\_\_ 4. *attach*

(A) detach (B) confess (C) urge (D) resolve

\_\_\_ 5. *gloomy*

(A) extreme (B) gay (C) keen (D) forthright

**【解答】** 1. C      2. B      3. D      4. A      5. B

**Exercise 20.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. A person's yearly i       e is all the money that he gets in a year.

(收入)

2. He has a s       e for extracting gold from sea water. (计划)

3. Will you p       r me a cup of tea, please? (倒)

4. The newspaper is an advertising m       m. (媒体)

5. I have no i       t in politics. (兴趣)



**【解答】** 1. income 2. scheme 3. pour 4. medium 5. interest

**Exercise 20. 10** 选出最适合句意的一个单词：

1. The thief \_\_\_\_\_ to the police that he had stolen the money.  
(A)offended (B)ceased (C)confessed (D)contributed
2. I have no \_\_\_\_\_ that you will pass the examination.  
(A)fiber (B)doubt (C)mode (D)sympathy
3. The trip to Alaska was quite a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ for her.  
(A)spot (B)mode (C)adventure (D)medium
4. A deaf and blind man shows \_\_\_\_\_ by facial expressions and gestures.  
(A)adventure (B)grocery (C)profession (D)emotions
5. Soldiers usually have to bear \_\_\_\_\_ hardship during the war.  
(A)queer (B)royal (C)gay (D)bitter
6. We will \_\_\_\_\_ the party for a week and hold it next Saturday.  
(A)advance (B)differ (C)delay (D)forgive
7. This clock is \_\_\_\_\_ for one year.  
(A)urged (B)situated (C)determined (D)guaranteed
8. Prices in this hotel are \_\_\_\_\_, not high at all.  
(A)moderate (B)broad (C)excessive (D)bitter
9. There is some beautiful scenery is our \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)atmosphere(B)neighborhood(C)fashion (D)scheme
10. He \_\_\_\_\_ this sentence from a speech by the President.  
(A)invented (B)attached (C)quoted (D)symbolized

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. D 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. C

**Exercise 20 11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当词性,填入空格中:

1. *combine*    The \_\_\_\_\_ of yellow and blue forms green.
2. *situate*    The store is in an ideal \_\_\_\_\_ to draw tourists.
3. *confess*    The thief's \_\_\_\_\_ of guilt closed the case.
4. *relate*    There is no \_\_\_\_\_ between the nations.
5. *converse*    He had a long telephone \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. combination 2. situation 3. confession 4. relation  
5. conversation

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 21

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

- We could see the *dim* outline of buildings \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) in the dark (B) in the bright daylight
- The *kite* has \_\_\_\_\_ to maintain its balance.  
(A) two legs (B) a tail
- A \_\_\_\_\_ man doesn't have much *leisure*.  
(A) free (B) busy
- A *blacksmith* makes and repairs thing made of \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) iron (B) wood
- The ice on the road *melted* in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) cold (B) sunshine

△ 解答 △  
1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

|                                        |                                                                                       |                    |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>advertise</b> ['ædvətaɪz]<br>v. 登广告 | They <b>advertised</b> in the newspaper That they had a used car for sale.            | 他们在报上登广告,说有部旧车要卖。  |
| <b>attack</b> [ə'tæk]<br>v. 攻击         | They <b>attacked</b> the enemy at sundown.                                            | 他们在日落攻击敌人。         |
| <b>blacksmith</b> ['blæksmiθ]<br>n. 铁匠 | A <b>blacksmith</b> makes things with iron by beating it and hammering it into shape. | 铁匠将铁加热后,锤打成形,制成物品。 |
| <b>brook</b> [brʊk]<br>n. 溪流           | A <b>brook</b> is a natural waterway smaller than a river.                            | 溪流是天然的水道,较河为小。     |

|                                                |                                                                                                                                          |                                          |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <b>ceiling</b> ['si:lɪŋ]<br>n. 天花板             | Lying on the sofa, he could see the <b>ceiling</b> of the room.                                                                          | 他躺在沙发上, 可以看到房间的天花板。                      |
| <b>comfort</b> ['kʌmfət]<br>v. 安慰              | I tried to <b>comfort</b> Jean after her mother's death.                                                                                 | 琴的母亲过世后, 我试着安慰她。                         |
| <b>confine</b> [kən'faɪn]<br>v. 1. 限制<br>2. 卧病 | Please <b>confine</b> your remarks to the subject we are talking about.<br><br>John was <b>confined</b> to bed for a week with his cold. | 请你将话题限制在我们正在谈论的主题上。<br><br>约翰因感冒卧病在床一星期。 |
| <b>convert</b> [kən'veɪt]<br>v. 改变<br>同 change | Give me time and I'll <b>convert</b> her to our political party.                                                                         | 给我时间, 我会使她改入我们的政党。                       |
| <b>cunning</b> ['kʌnɪŋ]<br>adj. 狡猾的            | He is as <b>cunning</b> as a fox.                                                                                                        | 他像狐狸一样狡猾。                                |
| <b>delegate</b> [ˈdelɪɡeɪt]<br>n. 代表           | Our club sent two <b>delegates</b> to attend the meeting.                                                                                | 我们的社团派了两名代表去参加会议。                        |

**Exercise 21.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Because of heavy rain he was \_\_\_\_\_ to his room all day.
2. We should \_\_\_\_\_ those who are in sorrow.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ can mend tools and horse-shoes.
4. When people lose something valuable, they usually \_\_\_\_\_ it in the newspaper.
5. John was \_\_\_\_\_ to Buddhism by a Chinese priest.

**【解答】** 1. confined 2. comfort 3. Blacksmiths 4. advertise  
5. converted

## 《第二部分》

|                                                  |                                                        |                   |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>dim</b> [dim]<br><i>adj.</i> 微暗的              | The light is too <b>dim</b> for me to see.             | 灯光太暗, 我看不见。       |
| <b>drag</b> [dræg]<br><i>v.</i> 拖                | The horse was <b>dragging</b> a heavy load.            | 马正拖着重负。           |
| <b>emperor</b> ['empərə]<br><i>n.</i> 皇帝         | Napoleon was the <b>Emperor</b> of France.             | 拿破仑是法国的皇帝。        |
| <b>estate</b> [is'teit]<br><i>n.</i> 财产          | The rich left a great <b>estate</b> when he died.      | 那富人死时留下一大笔财产。     |
| <b>exclaim</b> [iks'kleim]<br><i>v.</i> 大叫       | "It's eight o'clock." His mother <b>exclaimed</b> .    | "八点了。"他的母亲大叫着。    |
| <b>fierce</b> [fiəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 凶猛的          | He bought a <b>fierce</b> dog to guard his house.      | 他买了一只恶犬看家。        |
| <b>fortunate</b> ['fɔ:tʃənɪt]<br><i>adj.</i> 幸福的 | You are <b>fortunate</b> in having such a fine family. | 你有一个这么好的家庭, 真是幸福。 |
| <b>gaze</b> [geiz]<br><i>v.</i> 凝视<br>同 stare    | For hours she sat <b>gazing</b> the stars.             | 她坐着凝视星星好几小时。      |
| <b>habit</b> ['hæbit]<br><i>n.</i> 习惯            | Some people said that smoking is a bad <b>habit</b> .  | 有人说抽烟是坏习惯。        |
| <b>hop</b> [hɒp]<br><i>v.</i> 跳跃                 | He had hurt his foot and had to <b>hop</b> along.      | 他的脚受伤, 不得不跳着走。    |

**Exercise 21.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Are you in the \_\_\_\_\_ of going to bed early and rising earlier?
2. The child had \_\_\_\_\_ at the stranger for a few minutes before answering his questions.
3. You are \_\_\_\_\_ to have such rich parents.
4. He has a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ 40 miles from Los Angeles with a country

house and a swimming pool on it.

5. He was \_\_\_\_\_ out of his hiding place.

【解答】 1. habit 2. gazed 3. fortunate 4. estate 5. dragged

### 《第三部分》

|                                                             |                                                                              |                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>independence</b><br>[ˌɪndɪˈpendəns]<br><i>n.</i> 独立      | People on these island fought for <b>independence</b> and finally succeeded. | 这些岛上的人民为独立而战,终获胜利。  |
| <b>international</b><br>[ˌɪntə(ː)nəʃənl]<br><i>adj.</i> 国际的 | A treaty is an <b>international</b> agreement.                               | 条约是国际协定。            |
| <b>kite</b> [kɑɪt]<br><i>n.</i> 风筝                          | A <b>kite</b> was flying in the air at the end of a long string.             | 风筝被绑在一根长线的尾端,飞翔在空中。 |
| <b>leisure</b> [ˈleɪʒə]<br><i>n.</i> 空闲                     | She spends at least half of her <b>leisure</b> in reading.                   | 她的空闲时间至少有一半花在阅读上。   |
| <b>machinery</b> [məˈʃɪnəri]<br><i>n.</i> 机器                | The factory has much new <b>machinery</b> .                                  | 这家工厂有许多新机器。         |
| <b>melt</b> [melt]<br><i>v.</i> 溶化<br>同 dissolve 反 freeze   | The ice will <b>melt</b> when the sun shines on it.                          | 冰被太阳照射时会溶化。         |
| <b>modest</b> [ˈmɒdɪst]<br><i>adj.</i> 谦逊的                  | The hero was very <b>modest</b> about his great deeds.                       | 那英雄对他伟大的功绩,毫不夸耀。    |
| <b>nervous</b> [ˈnɜːvəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 紧张的                 | A person who has been overworking is likely to become <b>nervous</b> .       | 工作过度的人容易紧张。         |

|                                           |                                                                                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>offer</b> ['ɒfə]<br>v. 提出<br>同 propose | He <b>offered</b> a few ideas to improve the plan.                                                  | 他提出一些意见以改进那个计划。                |
| <b>pack</b> [pæk]<br>v. 装<br>n. 包         | She <b>packed</b> a suitcase for the trip.<br>The camper had cooking equipment in his <b>pack</b> . | 她为旅行装了一个旅行箱。<br>那露营者的背包里有烹饪装备。 |

**Exercise 21.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Six nations have signed a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ trade agreement.
2. When you began to earn money, you can live a life of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I like a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ girl, who is neither shy nor loud.
4. She is so \_\_\_\_\_ that she jumps at the slightest noise.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ twenty dollars for a new stove, but the seller refused to sell it at that price.

**【解答】** 1. international    2. independence    3. modest  
4. nervous    5. offered

#### 《第四部分》

|                                                       |                                                                        |                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>paw</b> [pɔ:]<br>n. (有爪的)脚                         | The dog lifted his two front <b>paws</b> before his master.            | 那只狗在主人面前立起两只前脚。  |
| <b>pigeon</b> ['pidʒin]<br>n. 鸽子                      | <b>Pigeons</b> are often trained to carry messages.                    | 鸽子常被训练来传送信息。     |
| <b>poverty</b> ['pɒvəti]<br>n. 贫穷<br>同 wealth         | His ragged clothes and broken furniture indicated his <b>poverty</b> . | 他的旧衣服和破家具表示他贫穷。  |
| <b>project</b> ['prɒdʒekt]<br>n. 计划<br>同 plan, scheme | A <b>project</b> to build a new church was discussed at the meeting.   | 那会议讨论了一个建新教堂的计划。 |

|                                                                  |                                                                                                                       |                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>reduce</b> ['ri'dju:s]<br>v. 减轻                               | She is now 150 pounds; she has to <b>reduce</b> her weight.                                                           | 她现在重一百五十磅,她刻减肥了。           |
| <b>reply</b> ['ri'plai]<br>v. 回复<br>n. 回答                        | She <b>replied</b> to my letter right away.<br>He made no <b>reply</b> to my question.                                | 她立刻回复了我的信。<br>他没回答我的问题。    |
| <b>rifle</b> ['raɪfl]<br>n. 步枪<br>同 musket                       | A <b>rifle</b> is usually fired from the shoulder.                                                                    | 步枪通常由肩上发射。                 |
| <b>salary</b> ['sæləri]<br>n. 薪水                                 | His <b>salary</b> will be increased next year.                                                                        | 他的薪水明年将会提高。                |
| <b>section</b> ['sekʃən]<br>n. 部分<br>v. 划分<br>同 divide, classify | Mother cut the pie into eight <b>sections</b> .<br>The teacher <b>sectioned</b> the history class by ability ratings. | 母亲将馅饼切成八份。<br>老师按能力将历史课分班。 |
| <b>shoot</b> [ʃu:t]<br>v. 射击<br>同 fire                           | He <b>shot</b> at a bird, but missed it.                                                                              | 他射击一只鸟,可是没命中。              |

**Exercise 21.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. I asked him where to go, but he didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Don't drive so fast; \_\_\_\_\_ speed, please.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ of his family made it impossible for him to go to school.
4. Soldiers are equipped with \_\_\_\_\_ and trained to use them.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ an arrow at the spot on the wall, but the arrow didn't even reach the wall.

**【解答】** 1. reply 2. reduce 3. poverty 4. rifles 5. shot



## 《第五部分》

|                                                                      |                                                                                                                                       |                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <b>slope</b> ['sləʊp]<br>n. 坡; 斜面<br><br>v. 倾斜                       | We climbed the steep <b>slope</b> of the hill.<br><br>The railroad <b>slopes</b> up slightly at this point.                           | 我们爬那座陡峭的山坡。<br><br>铁路在此处有轻微的倾斜。          |
| <b>spider</b> ['spaɪdə]<br>n. 蜘蛛                                     | A <b>spider</b> is a small animal with eight legs.                                                                                    | 蜘蛛是有八只脚的小动物。                             |
| <b>starve</b> ['stɑ:v]<br>v. 饥饿                                      | They got lost in the desert and starved to <b>death</b> .                                                                             | 他们迷失在沙漠中而饿死。                             |
| <b>structure</b> ['strʌktʃə]<br>n. 1. 结构<br><br>2. 建筑物<br>固 building | The <b>structure</b> of English is quite different from that of Chinese.<br><br>The city hall is a large stone <b>structure</b> .     | 英文的结构和中文相差甚多。<br><br>市政府是栋大型的石造建筑物。      |
| <b>swallow</b> ['swələʊ]<br>v. 吞; 咽<br><br>n. 燕子                     | We <b>swallowed</b> all our food and drink.<br><br>In the early evening, the air was filled with graceful <b>swallows</b> .           | 我们吞咽下所有的食物和饮料。<br><br>初暮时, 空中飞满了体态优雅的燕子。 |
| <b>tender</b> ['tendə]<br>adj. 嫩的<br><br>v. 偿还; 提出                   | Cook the meat a long time so that it's really <b>tender</b> .<br><br>He <b>tendered</b> us money as payment for the book he had lost. | 把肉煮久一点, 这样才嫩。<br><br>他给我们钱, 作为他遗失那本书的赔偿。 |
| <b>trust</b> [trʌst]<br>n. 信赖<br><br>v. 相信<br>固 rely(on)             | A child puts <b>trust</b> in his parents.<br><br>You shouldn't <b>trust</b> him; he is dishonest.                                     | 孩子信赖父母亲。<br><br>你不该相信他, 他不诚实。            |

|                                                                    |                                                                                                                    |                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>vest</b> [vest]<br>n. 背心<br>回 waistcoat                         | He likes to wear a <b>vest</b> under his jacket.                                                                   | 他喜欢在夹克里穿件背心。                     |
| <b>weed</b> [wi:d]<br>n. 杂草<br>v. 除草                               | Many <b>weeds</b> are growing among the flowers.<br><br>He spent the whole afternoon <b>weeding</b> in the garden. | 花丛中长出许多野草。<br><br>他花了整个下午在花园里除草。 |
| <b>yield</b> [ji:ld]<br>v. 1. 出产<br>回 produce<br>2. 屈服<br>回 submit | This land <b>yields</b> good crops.<br><br>The enemy finally <b>yielded</b> to our soldiers.                       | 这片田出产好谷物。<br><br>敌人终于向我们的士兵屈服。   |

**Exercise 21.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The man said he would \_\_\_\_\_ rather than beg for food.
2. Most \_\_\_\_\_ make webs to catch insects for food.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ of that roof is very steep.
4. Yesterday he \_\_\_\_\_ his resignation to the Prime Minister.
5. He is not the sort of man to be \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. starve 2. spiders 3. slope 4. tendered 5. trusted

### 成果测验

**Exercise 21.6** 找出一个与其它三个相关的词:

- \_\_\_ 1. (A)parcel (B)pack (C)part (D)packet
- \_\_\_ 2. (A)progress (B)scheme (C)plan (D)project
- \_\_\_ 3. (A)cunning (B)tender (C)clever (D)sly

- \_\_\_4. (A)drag (B)haul (C)pull (D)delay
- \_\_\_5. (A)brook (B)broom (C)steam (D)creek
- \_\_\_6. (A)respond (B)reply (C)relate (D)answer
- \_\_\_7. (A)vow (B)confidence(C)trust (D)reliance
- \_\_\_8. (A)practice (B)custom (C)habit (D)comfort
- \_\_\_9. (A)reduce (B)yield (C)lessen (D)decrease
- \_\_\_10. (A)exclaim (B)yell (C)proclaim (D)shout

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. C

**Exercise 21.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_1. 紧张的  
(A)tragic (B)violent (C)nervous (D)cautious
- \_\_\_2. 空闲  
(A)patience (B)lack (C)independence (D)leisure
- \_\_\_3. 饥饿  
(A)escape (B)starve (C)sting (D)quiver
- \_\_\_4. 登广告  
(A)advertise(B)broadcast (C)contract (D)purchase
- \_\_\_5. 贫穷  
(A)doubt (B)servant (C)poverty (D)cowardice

**【解答】** 1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. C

**Exercise 21.8** 找出一个与斜体字意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_ 1. *arrogant*

(A) smooth (B) modest (C) soft (D) dull

\_\_\_ 2. *grieve*

(A) sorrow (B) gloomy (C) comfort (D) lucky

\_\_\_ 3. *push*

(A) delay (B) drag (C) seize (D) pour

\_\_\_ 4. *increase*

(A) reduce (B) melt (C) dissolve (D) enlarge

\_\_\_ 5. *miserable*

(A) tender (B) modest (C) fortunate (D) clever

**【解答】** 1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C

**Exercise 21.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一字母:

1. I asked him, but he made no r \_ \_ \_ y. (回答)

2. Don't s \_ \_ \_ \_ w the hot coffee; your throat may burn. (吞咽)

3. Tiberius was the e \_ \_ \_ \_ r of Rome during the life of Jesus Christ.  
(回答)

4. He went hunting with a r \_ \_ \_ e in his hand. (步枪)

5. The children choose one d \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ e to buy the flowers. (代表)

**【解答】** 1. reply 2. swallow 3. emperor 4. rifle 5. delegate

**Exercise 21.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_ 1. This factory *yields* cars of good quality.  
(A)sells (B)buys (C)produces (D)offers
- \_\_\_\_ 2. He has just bought an *estate* in the country.  
(A)pasture (B)property (C)house (D)castle
- \_\_\_\_ 3. We *gazed* at the man, wondering who he was.  
(A)conceived (B)conversed (C)mocked (D)stared
- \_\_\_\_ 4. The general decided to *attack* the enemy's positions.  
(A)offend (B)oppose (C)guard (D)assault
- \_\_\_\_ 5. The man was killed by a *fierce* wolf.  
(A)violent (B)bitter (C)stubborn (D)nervous.
- \_\_\_\_ 6. The rough material hurt the *child's* tender skin.  
(A)gay (B)beautiful (C)soft (D)tough
- \_\_\_\_ 7. The snow soon *melted* away when the warm weather came.  
(A)resolved (B)dissolved (C)destroyed (D)reduced
- \_\_\_\_ 8. Coal can be *converted* to gas by burning.  
(A)reduced (B)yielded (C)changed (D)separated
- \_\_\_\_ 9. The young actress is very *modest* about his success.  
(A)humble (B)proud (C)merry (D)serious
- \_\_\_\_ 10. A team of four horses *dragged* the big log out of the forest.  
(A)fetched (B)pulled (C)pushed (D)carried

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. B

## LESSON 22

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案

1. *Delicate* machines should be handled with great \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)force (B)care
2. The farmers *drained* the swamp to get more \_\_\_\_\_ for crops.  
(A)land (B)water
3. With *brooms* we \_\_\_\_\_ our rooms.  
(A)clean (B)decorate
4. \_\_\_\_\_ voices *hailed* us as we entered the hall.  
(A)Angry (B)Cheerful
5. The *foul* air in this room should be \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)changed (B)cooled down

解答

1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A

## 《第一部分》

**affair**[ə'fɛə]

n. 1. 事务

回 business, job

When he asked me how much money I earned, I told him to mind his own *affairs*.

当他问我赚多少钱时,我叫他别管闲事。

2. 事情

The meeting was a noisy *affair*.

那会议十分嘈杂。

**attempt**[ə'tempt]

v. 试图

I *attempted* to speak but was told to be quiet.

我想说话,可是有人叫我闭嘴。

**blade**[bleid]

n. 刀锋

A razor should have a very sharp *blade*.

刮胡刀应有锐利的刀锋。

|                                                              |                                                                                                                      |                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>broom</b> [bru:m]<br>n. 扫帚                                | I swept the broken glass into a pile with a <b>broom</b> .                                                           | 我用扫帚把碎玻璃扫成一堆。                             |
| <b>cell</b> [sel]<br>n. 1. 小蜂窝<br><br>2. 细胞                  | Bees store honey in the <b>cells</b> of a honeycomb.<br><br>All animals and plants are made of <b>cells</b> .        | 蜜蜂将花蜜储存在蜂巢的各个小蜂窝中。<br><br>所有的动植物都由细胞组成。   |
| <b>command</b> [kə'mɑ:nd]<br>v. 命令                           | The officer <b>commanded</b> his men to fire at the enemy.                                                           | 指挥官命令部下向敌军开火。                             |
| <b>confirm</b> [kən'fə:m]<br>v. 证实<br>同 approve              | The rumor that there was flooding was <b>confirmed</b> by a news broadcast.                                          | 洪水的谣传已被新闻广播所证实。                           |
| <b>convince</b> [kən'vins]<br>v. 使相信<br>同 persuade           | We are <b>convinced</b> that Anne went by train rather than by plane.                                                | 我们相信安妮是坐火车去的,不是坐飞机。                       |
| <b>cure</b> [kjʊə]<br>v. 治愈<br>同 remedy, heal<br><br>n. 治疗方法 | This medicine should <b>cure</b> you of your cold.<br><br>He has tried all sort of <b>cures</b> but he is still ill. | 这种药应该能治愈你的感冒。<br><br>他已尝试过各种治疗方法,可是病还是没好。 |
| <b>delicate</b> ['delikit]<br>adj. 灵敏的                       | A pianist or a violinist must have a <b>delicate</b> sense of touch.                                                 | 钢琴家或小提琴家都必须有灵敏的触感。                        |

**Exercise 22.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Scientists sometimes need very \_\_\_\_\_ instruments.
2. Resting in bed will often \_\_\_\_\_ a cold.
3. The mistake you made \_\_\_\_\_ me you hadn't studied your lesson.
4. He sent the written request to \_\_\_\_\_ his telephone order.

5. The captain of a ship \_\_\_\_\_ all the officers and men.

【解答】 1. delicate 2. cure 3. convinced 4. confirm 5. commands

### 《第二部分》

|                                                    |                                                                                 |                   |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>dip</b> [dɪp]<br>v. 伸入<br>同 immerse             | She <b>dipped</b> her hand into the pool to see how cold the water was.         | 她将手伸入游泳池试水有多冷。    |
| <b>drain</b> [dreɪn]<br>v. 排水<br>同 irrigate        | You should dig trenches to <b>drain</b> away the water.                         | 你应该挖沟以便排水。        |
| <b>emphasis</b> [ˈemfəˌsɪs]<br>n. 强调               | Some schools put special <b>emphasis</b> on language study.                     | 有些学校特别注重语言学科。     |
| <b>estimate</b> [ˈestɪmeɪt]<br>v. 估计<br>同 evaluate | The gardener <b>estimated</b> that it would take four hours to weed the garden. | 花匠估计替花园除草需要四小时。   |
| <b>figure</b> [ˈfɪɡə]<br>n. 人影; 画像                 | I saw a <b>figure</b> approaching in the darkness.                              | 我在黑暗中看见有人影接近。     |
| <b>foul</b> [faʊl]<br>adj. 污浊的                     | We opened the windows to let out the <b>foul</b> air.                           | 我们打开窗子, 让污浊的空气流出。 |
| <b>gem</b> [dʒem]<br>n. 宝石<br>同 jewel              | Diamonds and rubies are well-known <b>gems</b> .                                | 钻石和红宝石都是大家熟知的宝石。  |
| <b>hail</b> [heɪl]<br>v. 欢呼<br>同 cheer, greet      | The crowd <b>hailed</b> the new boxing champion.                                | 群众向新的拳击冠军欢呼。      |
| <b>horizon</b> n. 地平线<br>[həˈraɪzn]                | We saw a small ship on the <b>horizon</b> .                                     | 我们看到地平线上有条小船。     |



|                             |                                 |          |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|----------|
| <b>indicate</b> ['ɪndɪkeɪt] | The arrow on the sign           | 标志上的箭头指示 |
| v. 指示                       | <b>indicates</b> the way to go. | 应走的方向。   |
| 同 designate                 |                                 |          |

**Exercise 22.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. A writer sometimes underlines important words for \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ his spoon into the soup and began breakfast.
3. The wall was covered with \_\_\_\_\_ of birds and flowers.
4. The air in this room is \_\_\_\_\_; open the window!
5. The crown of the queen sparkled with \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. emphasis 2. dipped 3. figures 4. foul 5. gems

### 《第三部分》

|                               |                                                                                        |                         |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>interrupt</b> ['ɪntə'rʌpt] | Don't <b>interrupt</b> me when I am busy.                                              | 在我忙时,不要打扰我。             |
| v. 打扰                         |                                                                                        |                         |
| <b>kneel</b> ['ni:l]          | She <b>knelt</b> down to pull weeds from the flower bed.                               | 她跪下拔去花坛中的杂草。            |
| v. 跪下                         |                                                                                        |                         |
| <b>lessen</b> ['lesn]         | The child's fever <b>lessened</b> during the night.                                    | 那孩子的发烧在晚上减轻了。           |
| v. 减轻                         |                                                                                        |                         |
| 同 increase                    |                                                                                        |                         |
| <b>magic</b> ['mædʒɪk]        | In fairy tales witches often use <b>magic</b> to change persons into animals or birds. | 在神话故事中,巫婆常使用魔术将人变成动物或鸟。 |
| n. 魔术                         |                                                                                        |                         |
| 同 witchcraft                  |                                                                                        |                         |
| <b>mend</b> [mend]            | My brother <b>mended</b> the broken doll for me.                                       | 我哥哥替我修补破损的娃娃。           |
| v. 修补                         |                                                                                        |                         |
| 同 repair, fix                 |                                                                                        |                         |
| <b>moist</b> [moɪst]          | The thick steam in the room had made the walls <b>moist</b> .                          | 房间中大量的水汽使得墙壁潮湿。         |
| adj. 潮湿的                      |                                                                                        |                         |

|                                                     |                                                                                                                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>nest</b> [nest]<br>n. 巢                          | Most birds lay their eggs in their <i>nests</i> .                                                                                 | 大部分的鸟在它们的巢中下蛋。                    |
| <b>official</b> [ə'fiʃəl]<br>n. 官员<br><br>adj. 公务上的 | The President is the most powerful government <i>official</i> .<br><br>The letter should be written in an <i>official style</i> . | 总统是最有权力的政府官员。<br><br>这封信应写成公函的形式。 |
| <b>package</b> ['pækɪdʒ]<br>n. 包裹                   | He carried a large <i>package</i> of books.                                                                                       | 他带来一大包书。                          |
| <b>payroll</b> ['peɪrəʊl]<br>n. 薪水册                 | Don't do the work until he puts you on the <i>payroll</i> .                                                                       | 直到他把你的名字写入薪水册后,你再做那件工作。           |

**Exercise 22.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He made a trip to Beijing on \_\_\_\_\_ business.
2. The birds build their \_\_\_\_\_ with twigs and leaves.
3. Her eyes got \_\_\_\_\_ when she heard the bad news.
4. I don't want to be \_\_\_\_\_ in my business.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ down and give God thanks for my recovery from sickness.

**【解答】** 1. official 2. nests 3. moist 4. interrupted 5. knelt

#### 《第四部分》

|                                                      |                                                                                                                                    |                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>pile</b> [paɪl]<br>n. 堆;大批<br><br>v. 堆积<br>同 heap | The room was full of <i>piles</i> of old books.<br><br>The snow <i>piled</i> so high in front of the door that we couldn't go out. | 这房间里摆满了一堆堆的旧书。<br><br>门前积雪太高,因此我们出不去。 |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>practical</b> <i>adj.</i> 实际的<br>['præktikəl]                                                             | His plan was interesting but not <i>practical</i> .                                                                                                                                     | 他的计划有趣,可是不实际。                                                       |
| <b>prompt</b> [prɒmpt]<br><i>adj.</i> 迅速的,果断的<br>同 immediate                                                 | His <i>prompt</i> action prevented serious trouble.                                                                                                                                     | 他迅速的行动避免了大祸。                                                        |
| <b>refer</b> [ri'fə:]<br><i>v.</i> 参考                                                                        | If you don't know what this mean, <i>refer</i> to the dictionary.                                                                                                                       | 如果你不知道这个意思,查字典。                                                     |
| <b>represent</b> [ˌreprɪ'zent]<br><i>v.</i> 代表<br>同 symbolize                                                | On the map, blue <i>represents</i> water and brown <i>represents</i> land.                                                                                                              | 在地图上,蓝色代表海,棕色代表陆地。                                                  |
| <b>righteous</b> ['raɪtʃəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 公正的                                                               | He is a <i>righteous</i> man; he always behaves justly.                                                                                                                                 | 他是个公正的人;他一向行为公正。                                                    |
| <b>sandwich</b> <i>n.</i> 三明治<br>['sænwɪtʃ]<br><i>v.</i> 夹在中间                                                | He ate <i>sandwiches</i> for lunch.<br><br>Their house was <i>sandwiched</i> between two tall buildings.                                                                                | 他午餐吃三明治。<br><br>他们的房子被夹在两栋大建筑物中间。                                   |
| <b>secure</b> [si'kjʊə]<br><i>adj.</i> 安心的<br><br><i>v.</i> 1. 保护<br>同 protect<br><br>2. 获得<br>同 get, obtain | He hoped for a <i>secure</i> old age.<br><br>We must <i>secure</i> ourselves against the dangers of the coming storm.<br><br>He's lucky to have <i>secured</i> himself such a good job. | 他希望有一个无忧无虑的晚年。<br><br>我们应保护自己,免得受到即将来临的暴雨之害。<br><br>他获得这么好的工作,真是幸运。 |
| <b>shortage</b> ['ʃɔ:tɪdʒ]<br><i>n.</i> 缺乏<br>同 lack 同 surplus                                               | The rice crop will be poor because of the <i>shortage</i> of the rain.                                                                                                                  | 稻米因缺雨,将会不足。                                                         |
| <b>smart</b> [smɑ:t]<br><i>adj.</i> 聪明的                                                                      | Both of his children are very <i>smart</i> .                                                                                                                                            | 他的两个孩子都非常聪明。                                                        |

**Exercise 22.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ to the dictionary for the meaning of the word.
2. The red lines on the map \_\_\_\_\_ railways.
3. The fort was \_\_\_\_\_ against any surprise attack.
4. I expect your \_\_\_\_\_ answer to my question.
5. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ of grain because of poor crops.

**【解答】** 1. refer 2. represent 3. secure 4. prompt 5. shortage

### 《第五部分》

|                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>spill</b> [spil]<br>v. 洒                                                      | The child <i>spilled</i> the milk on the floor.                                                                                                                                            | 那孩子将牛奶洒在地上。                                            |
| <b>statesman</b> n. 政治家<br>['steitsmən]                                          | Winston Churchill was a famous English <i>statesman</i> .                                                                                                                                  | 温斯顿·邱吉尔是有名的英国政治家。                                      |
| <b>struggle</b> ['strʌgl]<br>v. 努力;奋斗                                            | The widow <i>struggled</i> to send her six children to college.                                                                                                                            | 那寡妇努力送六个孩子上大学。                                         |
| <b>sway</b> [swei]<br>v. 摇摆<br><br>n. 摇摆                                         | The branches of the trees were <i>swaying</i> in the wind.<br><br>The <i>sway</i> of the pail caused some milk to spill out.                                                               | 树枝在风中摇摆。<br><br>摆荡的桶使一些牛奶溢出。                           |
| <b>term</b> [tə:m]<br>n. 1. 期间<br><br>2. 学期<br>同 semester<br><br>3. 术语<br>同 word | The President is elected for a four-year <i>term</i> ?<br><br>Are there any examinations at the end of this <i>term</i> ?<br><br>The author uses many technical <i>terms</i> in this book. | 选上的总统任期四年?<br><br>这学期末有什么考试吗?<br><br>那位作者在本书中用了许多专门术语。 |

|                                                   |                                                                                                |                                |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 4. 条件(常用复数)<br>同 conditions                       | The <i>terms</i> of the contract are unfair.                                                   | 合同的条件不公平。                      |
| <b>toil</b> [tɔɪl]<br>v. 辛苦工作<br>n. 1. 辛劳         | They <i>toiled</i> with their hands for a living.<br>He succeeded after years of <i>toil</i> . | 他们为生计而用双手辛苦地工作。<br>他在多年的辛劳后成功。 |
| 2. 网(常用复数)                                        | A lion was caught in the <i>toils</i> .                                                        | 一只狮子陷入网中。                      |
| <b>tune</b> [tju:n]<br>n. 节奏<br>同 melody<br>v. 调音 | There are <i>tunes</i> that are easy to remember.<br>A man is <i>tuning</i> the piano.         | 有些节奏容易记住。<br>有个人正在为钢琴调音。       |
| <b>vice</b> [vais]<br>n. 恶习<br>同 evil 反 virtue    | He loves drinking beer; it is one of his <i>vices</i> .                                        | 他喜欢喝啤酒, 这是他的恶习之一。              |
| <b>weep</b> [wi:p]<br>v. 哭泣<br>同 cry              | He lost control of his feelings and began to <i>weep</i> .                                     | 他无法控制自己的感情, 开始哭泣。              |
| <b>zone</b> [zoun].<br>n. 地区<br>同 area            | Don't come into the danger <i>zone</i> .                                                       | 不要进入危险地带。                      |

**Exercise 22.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Who has \_\_\_\_\_ the ink on my notebook?
2. We honored him as our leading \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ to get on the bus during the rush hours.
4. In spite of the police, there is usually a certain amount of \_\_\_\_\_ in all big cities.
5. Do you know the \_\_\_\_\_ of this song?

【解答】 1. spilled 2. statesman 3. struggled 4. vice 5. tune

### 成果测验

**Exercise 22.6** 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. a famous *statesman*  
(A) lawyer (B) soldier (C) businessman (D) politician
- \_\_\_ 2. a *smart* boy  
(A) dirty (B) swift (C) clever (D) small
- \_\_\_ 3. a *secure* position  
(A) safe (B) good (C) modest (D) bad
- \_\_\_ 4. a *righteous* man  
(A) practical (B) just (C) clever (D) fierce
- \_\_\_ 5. to put *stress* on something  
(A) spot (B) emphasis (C) emotion (D) trust
- \_\_\_ 6. to *cure* illness  
(A) vanish (B) repair (C) heal (D) diminish
- \_\_\_ 7. to *stand* for something  
(A) hail (B) refer (C) confirm (D) represent
- \_\_\_ 8. a *safety* zone  
(A) area (B) rule (C) vest (D) device
- \_\_\_ 9. to *repair* something  
(A) reduce (B) mend (C) respond (D) refer
- \_\_\_ 10. to *convince* someone  
(A) interrupt (B) approve (C) convert (D) assure

【解答】 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. D

**Exercise 22.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

\_\_\_\_ 1. 潮湿的

- (A)modest (B)moist (C)moderate (D)dim

\_\_\_\_ 2. 立即的

- (A)prompt (B)magic (C)fierce (D)smart

\_\_\_\_ 3. 官员

- (A)senator (B)mayor (C)instructor (D)official

\_\_\_\_ 4. 试图

- (A)refer (B)toil (C)attempt (D)pile

\_\_\_\_ 5. 宝石

- (A)gold (B)gem (C)silver (D)cell

**【解答】** 1. B    2. A    3. D    4. C    5. B

**Exercise 22.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_\_ 1. *virtue*

- (A)spider (B)lack (C)leisure (D)vice

\_\_\_\_ 2. *crude*

- (A)weak (B)delicate (C)safe (D)moist

\_\_\_\_ 3. *foul*

- (A)dirty (B)clean (C)dry (D)damp

\_\_\_\_ 4. *obey*

- (A)reduce (B)interrupt (C)command (D)yield

\_\_\_\_ 5. *surplus*

- (A)shortage (B)leisure (C)evil (D)wage

**【解答】** 1. D      2. B      3. B      4. C      5. A

**Exercise 22.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. My high school puts great e \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ s on studies that are practical in our daily life. (强调)
2. Please c \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ m your telephone message. (证实)
3. It is not polite to i \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ t when someone is talking. (打扰)
4. The poor beggar had to s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ e for a living. (奋斗)
5. It took many hours to c \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ e John of his wife's guilt. (使相信)

**【解答】** 1. emphasis    2. confirm    3. interrupt    4. struggle  
5. convince

**Exercise 22.10** 选出最适合句意的一个单词:

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ for joy when she won the award.  
(A)piled      (B)struggled    (C)confessed    (D)wept
2. Leave me alone! Mind you own \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)affairs      (B)defects      (C)dignity      (D)virtue
3. A colonel is an officer who \_\_\_\_\_ a regiment.  
(A)confines    (B)assaults    (C)commands    (D)obeys
4. He had the \_\_\_\_\_ of his skates sharpened.  
(A)slopes      (B)backs      (C)tunes      (D)blades
5. The prisoners \_\_\_\_\_ to escape but failed.  
(A)swayed    (B)attempted    (C)exclaimed    (D)intervened
6. Parents try to \_\_\_\_\_ their children of bad habits.



(A)cure      (B)dissolve      (C)drain      (D)yield

7. He has \_\_\_\_\_ himself that his method is the best.

(A)convinced      (B)restrained      (C)indicated      (D)represented

8. We \_\_\_\_\_ that it would take three months to finish the work.

(A)attempted      (B)estimated      (C)converted      (D)interrupted

9. The \_\_\_\_\_ machine can record even very slight changes.

(A)dull      (B)fierce      (C)foul      (D)delicate

10. She went into the church and \_\_\_\_\_ down to pray.

(A)melt      (B)piled      (C)knelt      (C)spilt

**【解答】** 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. C

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 23

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

- Most flowers would *perish* when \_\_\_\_\_ comes.  
(A) winter (B) summer
- Experts* know a lot about \_\_\_\_\_ things.  
(A) special (B) general
- They look so \_\_\_\_\_ each other that we thought they were *twins*.  
(A) alike (B) unlike
- I was most *grateful* to John for his \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) kindness (B) cruelty
- Most \_\_\_\_\_ turn *purple* when they ripen.  
(A) apples (B) grapes

△ 解答 △

1. A 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**acid** ['æsid]  
n. 酸性物质

Some **acids** burn holes in cloth and wood.

有些酸性物质能在布料或木头上烧成洞。

**approach** [ə'prəʊtʃ]  
v. 接近

As we **approached** the man, we saw that he was blind.

当我们接近那个人时,发现他是瞎的。

**battle** ['bætl]  
n. 战斗

It is interesting to watch a **battle** between two lions.

看两只狮子搏斗是有趣的。

**bough** [bau]  
n. 树枝  
同 branch

The **bough** bent under the weight of the snow.

那树枝因雪的重压而弯曲。

|                                                  |                                                                       |                        |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>capable</b> ['keɪpəbl]<br>adj. 有能力的           | Mr. Smith is a man <b>capable</b> of doing anything.                  | 史密斯先生能做任何事。            |
| <b>choke</b> [tʃoʊk]<br>v. 窒息<br>同 suffocate     | The smoke from the burning building almost <b>choked</b> the fireman. | 着火建筑物冒出来的烟, 几乎使救火员窒息。  |
| <b>comrade</b> ['kɒmrid]<br>n. 伙伴<br>同 companion | The two boy were close <b>comrades</b> and did everything together.   | 这两个男孩是亲密的伙伴, 做任何事都在一起。 |
| <b>consult</b> [kən'sʌlt]<br>v. 请教               | Have you <b>consulted</b> your doctor about your illness?             | 你已向医生请教过病情吗?           |
| <b>credit</b> ['kredit]<br>n. 信用<br>同 trust      | If you pay your bills on time, your <b>credit</b> will be good.       | 如果你能按时付清帐单, 你的信用将会很好。  |
| <b>declare</b> [di'kleə]<br>v. 宣布                | When will the results of the election be <b>declared</b> ?            | 选举结果何时宣布?              |

**Exercise 23.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The rabbits hid under a pile of \_\_\_\_\_ cut from the tree.
2. As winter \_\_\_\_\_, the weather grew colder.
3. Some airplanes are \_\_\_\_\_ of flying 1,000 miles an hour.
4. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ a dictionary for the meaning of a new word.
5. Fighting had been going on for a year but war had not yet been \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. boughs    2. approached    3. capable    4. consult  
5. declared

## 《第二部分》

|                                                                 |                                                                                                    |                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>destroy</b> [dis'trɔɪ]<br>v. 破坏                              | Careless children <b>destroy</b> all their toys.                                                   | 粗心的孩子会弄坏所有的玩具。     |
| <b>disturb</b> [dis'tɜ:b]<br>v. 扰乱<br>同 bother                  | She opened the door quietly so as not to <b>disturb</b> the sleeping child.                        | 她静静地开门,以免惊扰睡觉的孩子。  |
| <b>effective</b> [i'fektiv]<br>adj. 有效的<br>同 ineffective        | His efforts to improve the school have been very <b>effective</b> .                                | 他为改善学校所做的努力,非常有效。  |
| <b>entire</b> [in'taɪə]<br>adj. 全部的<br>同 whole, total, complete | The <b>entire</b> people in the country were surprised at the news that the earthquake was coming. | 全国的人民对地震快来的消息都很惊讶。 |
| <b>expert</b> ['ekspə:t]<br>n. 专家                               | She is an <b>expert</b> in teaching small children.                                                | 她是教导小孩的专家。         |
| <b>favor</b> ['feivə]<br>n. 偏爱                                  | A mother shouldn't show too much <b>favor</b> to one of her children.                              | 母亲不应该太偏爱某一个孩子。     |
| <b>flutter</b> ['flʌtə]<br>v. 拍翅                                | The wings of the bird still <b>fluttered</b> after it had been shot down.                          | 鸟被打落后,翅膀还在拍动。      |
| <b>fur</b> [fə:]<br>n. 毛皮                                       | The <b>fur</b> coat will keep you warm during the winter.                                          | 毛皮大衣在冬天能使你暖和。      |
| <b>grateful</b> ['greɪtful]<br>adj. 感激的                         | I am <b>grateful</b> to the friends who have helped me.                                            | 我非常感激曾帮助过我的朋友。     |
| <b>hell</b> [hel]<br>n. 地狱<br>同 heaven                          | Wicked persons are said to be punished in <b>hell</b> after death.                                 | 据说坏人死后会在地狱受处罚。     |

**Exercise 23.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He did all he could do to win her \_\_\_\_\_.

2. The new system of taxation will be \_\_\_\_\_ from next May.  
 3. Our hope of a picnic was completely \_\_\_\_\_ by the heavy rain.  
 4. She was wearing a very expensive \_\_\_\_\_ coat.  
 5. The curtains were \_\_\_\_\_ in the breeze.

【解答】 1. favor 2. effective 3. destroyed 4. fur 5. fluttering

### 《第三部分》

|                                                 |                                                                                            |                            |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>immense</b> [i'mens]<br>adj. 极广大的            | An ocean is an <i>immense</i> body of water.                                               | 大海是一片汪洋。                   |
| <b>instant</b> ['instənt]<br>adj. 立刻的           | The medicine gave <i>instant</i> relief from pain.                                         | 这种药立刻减轻了痛苦。                |
| <b>join</b> [dʒɔɪn]<br>v. 连接                    | Those two towns are <i>joined</i> by a railway.                                            | 这两镇由一条铁路连接。                |
| <b>lash</b> [læʃ]<br>n. 鞭打<br>v. 鞭打<br>同 whip   | The prisoner received 'ten <i>lashes</i> .<br><br>He <i>lashed</i> the horse until it ran. | 囚犯被打十鞭。<br><br>他鞭打马直到它跑为止。 |
| <b>lodge</b> [lɒdʒ]<br>v. 住宿<br>同 reside, dwell | We <i>lodged</i> in a hotel on our trip.                                                   | 我们旅行时,住在一家旅馆里。             |
| <b>mast</b> [mɑːst]<br>n. 桅杆                    | The ship has four <i>masts</i> for its sails.                                              | 那条船有四根桅杆挂帆。                |
| <b>mirror</b> ['mɪrə]<br>n. 镜子                  | A woman usually carries a small <i>mirror</i> in her bag.                                  | 女人通常在手提包中携带一面小镜子。          |
| <b>nail</b> [neɪl]<br>n. 1. 指甲                  | Many woman have <i>long</i> nails for beauty.                                              | 许多女人为爱漂亮而留有长指甲。            |

|                                               |                                                                                   |                       |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 2. 钉子                                         | He hammered some <b>nails</b> into the piece of hard wood.                        | 他将一些钉子敲入那块坚硬的木头中。     |
| <b>observe</b> [əb'zə:v]<br>v. 1. 观察          | Did you <b>observe</b> anything strange in that boy's behavior?                   | 你观察到那男孩的行为有什么奇怪的地方吗?  |
| 2. 遵守                                         | A careful driver <b>observes</b> the traffic rules.                               | 谨慎的司机遵守交通规则。          |
| <b>outlook</b> ['aut-luk]<br>n. 景色<br>同 scene | From my study window I have a pleasant <b>outlook</b> over mountains and valleys. | 从我书房的窗口, 可以看到山谷美丽的景色。 |

**Exercise 23.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the rule about not walking on the grass.
2. The driver saw in his driving \_\_\_\_\_ that a police car was following him.
3. One of the sailors climbed up the \_\_\_\_\_ to see what was on the horizon.
4. The shipwrecked sailors were \_\_\_\_\_ in the hotel.
5. The horse didn't run very fast, so he \_\_\_\_\_ it over the back with his whip.

【解答】 1. observe 2. mirror 3. mast 4. lodged 5. lashed

#### 《第四部分》

|                                      |                                                                                  |                    |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>passage</b> ['pæsidʒ]<br>n. 1. 通过 | The old bridge is not strong enough to allow the <b>passage</b> of heavy trucks. | 旧桥不够坚固, 无法让重型卡车通过。 |
| 2. 通道                                | The <b>passage</b> between the two houses was blocked.                           | 那两栋房子间的通道被阻塞了。     |

|                                                               |                                                                                                                            |                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>perish</b> ['periʃ]<br>v. 死                                | Hundreds of people <b>perished</b> in the earthquake.                                                                      | 那次地震死了好几百人。                        |
| <b>politician</b> [,pɒli'tiʃən]<br>n. 政客                      | <b>Politicians</b> are very busy when the election time comes.                                                             | 选举期间,政客们都非常忙碌。                     |
| <b>primary</b> ['praɪməri]<br>adj. 主要的<br>同 principal, chief  | His <b>primary</b> reason for studying was to get a better job.                                                            | 他念书的主要动机是想获得一份较好的工作。               |
| <b>purple</b> ['pə:pl]<br>n. 紫色                               | The artist likes to use <b>purple</b> in his paintings.                                                                    | 那个画家喜欢用紫色画画。                       |
| <b>reflect</b> [ri'flekt]<br>v. 1. 反射; 反映<br>2. 考虑<br>同 think | The sunlight was <b>reflected</b> from the water.<br><br>Take enough time to <b>reflect</b> before doing important things. | 阳光从水中反射出来。<br><br>在做重要事之前,先考虑一段时间。 |
| <b>require</b> [ri'kwaɪə]<br>v. 需要<br>同 need, demand          | Every foreign student is <b>required</b> to take an English examination.                                                   | 每一个外国学生都必须考英文。                     |
| <b>risk</b> [risk]<br>n. 危险                                   | There are always some <b>risks</b> in every adventure.                                                                     | 每次冒险总是会有一些危险。                      |
| <b>sauce</b> [sɔ:s]<br>n. 酱                                   | The vegetables were eaten with a cheese <b>sauce</b> .                                                                     | 蔬菜蘸着乳酪酱吃。                          |
| <b>seek</b> [si:k]<br>v. 寻找<br>同 search, look for             | He is going to Canada to <b>seek</b> his fortune.                                                                          | 他将到加拿大寻求发展。                        |

**Exercise 23.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The police opened a \_\_\_\_\_ through the crowd for the President.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ cause of Tom's failure is his laziness.

3. After \_\_\_\_\_ for a time, he decided not to go.  
 4. All passengers are \_\_\_\_\_ to show their tickets.  
 5. Fishermen face a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in their daily lives.

【解答】 1. passage 2. primary 3. reflecting 4. required 5. risks

《第五部分》

|                                              |                                                                                                             |                                    |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>shriek</b> [ʃri:k]<br>n. 尖叫声<br><br>v. 尖叫 | A <b>shriek</b> of pain came from the wounded man.<br><br>The girls were all <b>shrieked</b> with laughter. | 受伤的人发出一声痛苦的尖叫。<br><br>女孩们都边叫边笑着。   |
| <b>snatch</b> [snætʃ]<br>v. 抢夺<br><br>n. 抓住  | The thief <b>snatched</b> her handbag and ran away.<br><br>He made a <b>snatch</b> at the rope but missed.  | 小偷抢了她的手提袋跑了。<br><br>他试着抓住绳子, 可没抓到。 |
| <b>spine</b> [spain]<br>n. 脊椎                | His <b>spine</b> was broken in the accident.                                                                | 他的脊椎在那次意外中折断了。                     |
| <b>stem</b> [stem]<br>n. 干; 茎                | The <b>stem</b> of a tree supports its branches and leaves.                                                 | 树干支撑着树枝和叶子。                        |
| <b>stumble</b> ['stʌmbl]<br>v. 跌倒            | He <b>stumbled</b> over a stone on the rough path.                                                          | 他被石头绊倒, 跌在崎岖的路上。                   |
| <b>sweep</b> [swi:p]<br>v. 清除<br>回 clean     | While her mother was cooking, Mary <b>swept</b> the floor.                                                  | 当玛丽的母亲煮饭时, 她扫地。                    |
| <b>territory</b> ['teritəri]<br>n. 地方        | Some people like to travel through unknown <b>territory</b> .                                               | 有些人喜欢到无人知的地方去旅行。                   |
| <b>torture</b> ['tɔ:tʃə]<br>v. 拷问            | Most of the civilized nations do not <b>torture</b> prisoners.                                              | 大多数文明的国家不会拷问犯人。                    |



|                                                           |                                                                        |                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>n. 痛苦</b>                                              | The sight of his sick brother was an unbearable <b>torture</b> to him. | 他弟弟生病的样子,对他是一种无法忍受的痛苦。 |
| <b>twin</b> [twin]<br><b>n. 双胞胎中的一个</b>                   | I can't tell one <b>twin</b> from the other; they look just alike.     | 我无法分辨出这两个双胞胎,他们长得几乎一样。 |
| <b>vine</b> [vain]<br><b>n. 藤; 蔓</b>                      | Melons and pumpkins grow on <b>vines</b> .                             | 甜瓜和南瓜长在藤上。             |
| <b>whip</b> [hwip]<br><b>v. 鞭打</b><br><b>回 beat, lash</b> | The boy was <b>whipped</b> for telling a lie.                          | 那孩子因说谎而被鞭打。            |
| <b>n. 鞭子</b>                                              | It is cruel to use a <b>whip</b> to punish a little child.             | 用鞭子惩罚小孩是残忍的。           |

**Exercise 23.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He was \_\_\_\_\_ by his father for bad manners.
2. Much \_\_\_\_\_ in the northern part of Africa is desert.
3. Many bridges were \_\_\_\_\_ away by the floods.
4. If you are not careful, you'll \_\_\_\_\_ over that box.
5. The boy was \_\_\_\_\_ from his home by two armed men.

**【解答】** 1. whipped 2. territory 3. swept 4. stumble 5. snatched

## 成果测验

**Exercise 23.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

- \_\_\_1. (A)lodge (B) dwell (C)reside (D)exist  
 \_\_\_2. (A)route (B)zone (C)path (D)passage  
 \_\_\_3. (A)primary (B)príncipal (B)practical (D)chief  
 \_\_\_4. (A)seek (B)require (C)need (D)demand  
 \_\_\_5. (A)seize (B)snatch (C)grasp (D)confirm  
 \_\_\_6. (A)fellow (B)comrade (D)delegate (D)companion  
 \_\_\_7. (A)capable (B)prompt (C)proficient (D)competent  
 \_\_\_8. (A)terror (B)danger (C)risk (D)peril  
 \_\_\_9. (A)unite (B)combine (C)join (D)command  
 \_\_\_10. (A)whole (B)complete (C)vast (D)entire

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. C

**Exercise 23.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_1. 专家  
 (A)expert (B)comrade (C)companion (D)statesman  
 \_\_\_2. 土地  
 (A)margin (B)property (C)horizon (D)territory  
 \_\_\_3. 清除  
 (A)seek (B)sweep (C)sway (D)lash  
 \_\_\_4. 偏爱  
 (A)emotion (B)trust (C)favor (D)comrade  
 \_\_\_5. 有效的

(A)candid (B)effective (C)practical (D)clever

【解答】 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. B

**Exercise 23.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:\_\_\_\_ 1. *hell*

(A)shortage (B)horizon (C)virtue (D)heaven

\_\_\_\_ 2. *construct*

(A)bother (B)destroy (C)acquire (D)establish

\_\_\_\_ 3. *peril*

(A)safety (B)favor (C)comfort (D)grief

\_\_\_\_ 4. *perish*

(A) dwell (B)stumble (C)repair (D)persist

\_\_\_\_ 5. *tiny*

(A)entire (B)primary (C)immense (D)effective

【解答】 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C

**Exercise 23.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. We must try to o \_ \_ \_ \_ e any kind of regulations. (遵守)

2. If you drive carefully, there is no r \_ \_ k of accident. (危险)

3. Mirrors r \_ \_ \_ \_ t our faces. (反映)

4. You'd better c \_ \_ \_ \_ t a doctor when you are sick. (请教)

5. I felt i \_ \_ \_ \_ t relief from pain after taking a dose of medicine. (立刻的)

【解答】 1. observe 2. risk 3. reflect 4. consult 5. instant

**Exercise 23. 10** 找出一个与句中斜体词意义最接近的词:

- \_\_\_1. The building was completely *destroyed* in the fire.  
(A)defended (B)reflected (C)choked (D)demolished
- \_\_\_2. Do you give *credit* to his account of what happened?  
(A)confidence (B)favor (C)emphasis (D)interest
- \_\_\_3. The bird *fluttered* its wings in the cage.  
(A)snatched (B)flapped (C)lashed (D)reflected
- \_\_\_4. He *choked* when a piece of meat stuck in his throat.  
(A)struggled (B)cried (C)stumbled (D)suffocated
- \_\_\_5. Do not *disturb* the baby; he is asleep.  
(A)bother (B)whip (C)approach (D)insult
- \_\_\_6. He *declared* himself a member of their party.  
(A)indicated (B)announced (C)consulted (D)convinced
- \_\_\_7. The boys *shrieked* when they saw the terrible accident.  
(A)hailed (B)disturbed (C)approached (D)screamed
- \_\_\_8. The police *tortured* the man to make him confess the crime.  
(A)lashed (B)required (C)tormented (D)whipped
- \_\_\_9. We saw the *immense* statue of the hero, thirty times life size.  
(A)entire (B)huge (C)divine (D)magnificent
- \_\_\_10. I feel *grateful* for your help.  
(A)competent (B)nervous (C)proud (D)thankful

**【解答】** 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. D

**Exercise 23.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当词性,填入空格中:

1. *require* Experience in a related field is a \_\_\_\_\_ for this job.
2. *reflect* He gave much \_\_\_\_\_ to the problem but still had no answer.
3. *observe* This telescope is used for the \_\_\_\_\_ of distant stars.
4. *disturb* You can work in here without any \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *destroy* The fire caused the \_\_\_\_\_ of two buildings.

**【解答】** 1. requirement      2. reflection      3. observation  
4. disturbance      5. destruction

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 24

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

1. He *declined* my offer to have lunch together, so I \_\_\_\_\_ have lunch with him.  
(A) may (B) may not
2. An *efficient* worker \_\_\_\_\_ time and money in doing his job.  
(A) saves (B) wastes
3. A *stupid* person behaves \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) bravely (B) foolishly
4. The room is like a *furnace*; it is terribly \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) hot (B) cold
5. \_\_\_\_\_ houses are more *permanent* than \_\_\_\_\_ houses.  
(A) Wooden, brick (B) Brick, wooden

△ 解答 △

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**acquire** [ə'kwaɪə]

v. 取得

同 gain, obtain

He **acquired** the money for his trip by working at night.

他晚上工作以赚取旅行的费用。

**apron** ['eɪprən]

n. 围裙

Wear an **apron** over the front part of your clothes to keep them clean while cooking.

烹饪时, 在衣前穿上围裙以保持衣服干净。

**bead** [bi:d]

n. 珠子

She is wearing a string of green **beads** around her neck.

她在脖子上挂了一串绿色的珠子。

|                                                                             |                                                                                              |                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>boundary</b> ['baundəri]<br>n. 界线                                        | The new <b>boundaries</b> were fixed after the war.                                          | 战后规定了新界线。                    |
| <b>career</b> [kə'riə]<br>n. 经历; 职业                                         | We can learn much by reading about the <b>careers</b> of great men.                          | 阅读伟人的经历, 可以学到许多。             |
| <b>chop</b> [tʃɒp]<br>v. 砍<br>回 cut                                         | He was <b>chopping</b> wood into small, short pieces for burning.                            | 他将木头砍成小而短的木片, 作为燃烧之用。        |
| <b>conceal</b> [kən'si:l]<br>v. 隐藏                                          | He <b>concealed</b> himself behind a large tree.                                             | 他藏在一棵大树后。                    |
| <b>contact</b> ['kɒntækt]<br>n. 接触                                          | If you bring fire into <b>contract</b> with gunpowder, there will be an explosion.           | 如果你让火和火药接触, 就会发生爆炸。          |
| <b>creep</b> [kri:p]<br>v. 爬行                                               | We <b>crept</b> through the bushes towards the enemy.                                        | 我们朝着敌军的方向, 爬行穿过丛林。           |
| <b>decline</b> [di'klaɪn]<br>v. 拒绝<br>回 refuse, reject<br>回 accept, consent | I said I would give him ten thousand dollars for the horse, but he <b>declined</b> my offer. | 我说我会以一万元的价格买那匹马, 可是他拒绝了我的提议。 |

**Exercise 24.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that he broke the window glass.
2. Churchill's \_\_\_\_\_ proves that he was a great man.
3. To bring fire into \_\_\_\_\_ with gasoline may cause an explosion.
4. The cat \_\_\_\_\_ quietly nearer to the bird, but the bird flew away.
5. I am sorry to \_\_\_\_\_ your invitation to dinner because I have to study for the examination.

**【解答】** 1. conceal 2. career 3. contact 4. crept 5. decline

## 《第二部分》

|                                                        |                                                                                                                         |                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>detail</b> ['di:teɪl]<br>n. 细节<br>同 particular      | Everything in her story is correct to the smallest <b>detail</b> .                                                      | 她的故事完全是真的,即使是最小的细节也不例外。               |
| <b>ditch</b> [dɪtʃ]<br>n. 排水沟;沟                        | A <b>ditch</b> is a long, narrow place dug in the earth to carry off water.                                             | 沟渠是在地上挖的细长构造,可用以排水。                   |
| <b>efficient</b> [ɪ'fɪʃənt]<br>adj. 有效率的               | Our <b>efficient</b> new machines are cheaper than old ones.                                                            | 我们有效率的新机器比旧的便宜。                       |
| <b>entitle</b> [ɪn'taɪtl]<br>v. 定名                     | The author <b>entitled</b> his book "Treasure Island".                                                                  | 作者将他的书定名为《金银岛》。                       |
| <b>experiment</b><br>[ɪks'perɪmənt]<br>n. 实验           | Scientists test out theories by <b>experiments</b> .                                                                    | 科学家借实验证明理论。                           |
| <b>favorite</b> ['feɪvərɪt]<br>adj. 最喜爱的<br>n. 最喜欢的人或物 | What is your <b>favorite</b> flower?<br>Among those records, Beethoven's Fifth Symphony is one of my <b>favorites</b> . | 你最喜欢什么花?<br>在那些唱片中,贝多芬的第五交响曲是我最喜欢的之一。 |
| <b>foam</b> [fəʊm]<br>n. 泡沫                            | The breaking waves make <b>foam</b> near the coast.                                                                     | 碎浪在岸旁激起了水沫。                           |
| <b>furnace</b> ['fə:nɪs]<br>n. 火炉                      | An oil <b>furnace</b> heats our school buildings in winter.                                                             | 我们学校大楼在冬天使用油炉取暖。                      |
| <b>grave</b> [ɡreɪv]<br>n. 坟墓<br>同 tomb                | We visited her <b>grave</b> and put flowers on it.                                                                      | 我们探望她的坟墓,并放一些花在上头。                    |
| <b>herd</b> [hə:d]<br>n. 兽群                            | We saw a big <b>herd</b> of cattle on the farm.                                                                         | 我们看到农场上有一大群牛。                         |



**Exercise 24.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. We found a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of elephants running together.
2. We buried the dead cat in a little \_\_\_\_\_ dug in the backyard.
3. Some people learn by \_\_\_\_\_ and others by experience.
4. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ worker deserves good pay.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ are usually used to irrigate fields and carry off water.

**【解答】** 1. herd 2. grave 3. experiment 4. efficient 5. Ditches

### 《第三部分》

|                                              |                                                                               |                         |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>import</b> [im'pɔ:t]<br>v. 输入             | The United States <b>imports</b> coffee from Brazil.                          | 美国自巴西输入咖啡。              |
| ['impɔ:t]<br>n. 输入                           | Last year we reduced the amount of <b>import</b> and expanded that of export. | 去年我们减低了输入量,并增加了输出。      |
| <b>instinct</b> ['instɪŋkt]<br>n. 才能         | He has an <b>instinct</b> for always doing and saying the right thing.        | 他有说话做事永不出错的本领。          |
| <b>joint</b> [dʒɔɪnt]<br>n. 连接处              | The <b>joints</b> of the chair were very loose.                               | 那把椅子的连接处非常不牢。           |
| <b>latter</b> ['lætə]<br>n. 后者<br>□ former   | Of these two men, the former is dead, but the <b>latter</b> is still alive.   | 这两个男人,前面一个已经死了,后面一个还活着。 |
| <b>lonesome</b> ['lʌnsəm]<br>adj. 寂寞的        | The old woman was <b>lonesome</b> without children.                           | 那没有孩子的老妇人很寂寞。           |
| <b>masterpiece</b><br>['mɑ:stəpi:s]<br>n. 杰作 | All of his paintings were considered <b>masterpieces</b> .                    | 他所有的绘画作品都被认为是杰作。        |

|                                                    |                                                                           |                          |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>miserable</b><br>[ˈmɪzərəbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 可怜的 | The child is hungry, tired, and homeless; he is a <b>miserable</b> child. | 那孩子又饿,又累,又无家可归;他是个可怜的孩子。 |
| <b>naked</b> [ˈneɪkɪd]<br><i>adj.</i> 裸体的          | Some <b>naked</b> boys were swimming in the river.                        | 一些没穿衣服的男孩正在河里游泳。         |
| <b>obtain</b> [əbˈteɪn]<br><i>v.</i> 获得            | It is necessary to <b>obtain</b> a permit to hunt or fish in this states. | 在这个国家里,打猎或钓鱼必需获得许可。      |
| <b>output</b> [ˈaʊtput]<br><i>n.</i> 产量            | What is the daily <b>output</b> of automobiles of this factory?           | 这家工厂的每日汽车产量是多少?          |

**Exercise 24.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- \_\_\_\_\_ during the last five years were greater than exports.
- He fell and put his knee out of \_\_\_\_\_.
- Most animals have a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to protect their young.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ sailor was all alone in a strange town across the sea from his home.
- Cold weather caused the leaves to fall and left the trees \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. Imports 2. joint 3. instinct 4. lonesome 5. naked

#### 《第四部分》

|                                                        |                                                                                                   |                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>passionate</b><br>[ˈpæʃənɪt]<br><i>adj.</i> 热情的;热烈的 | They soon fell in <b>passionate</b> love with each other.                                         | 他们很快地就陷入热恋之中。              |
| <b>permanent</b><br>[ˈpɜːmənənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 长期的    | After doing temporary jobs for a month, he got a <b>permanent</b> position as a clerk in a store. | 做了一个月的临时工后,他找到了一个当店员的长期工作。 |

|                                                          |                                                                                                                     |                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>populous</b> ['pɒpjələs]<br>adj. 人口稠密的                | China is one of the <b>populous</b> countries.                                                                      | 中国是人口稠密的国家之一。                      |
| <b>principle</b> ['prɪnsəpl]<br>n. 原则; 主义                | We are agreed in <b>principle</b> but not in detail.                                                                | 我们在原则上是一致的, 但在细节上不一致。              |
| <b>pursue</b> (pə'sju:)<br>v. 追捕                         | The police are now <b>pursuing</b> the escaped prisoner.                                                            | 警察正在追捕逃犯。                          |
| <b>reform</b> (rɪ'fɔ:m)<br>v. 改革                         | The new President promised to <b>reform</b> the government.                                                         | 新总统保证要改革政府。                        |
| <b>rescue</b> ('reskju:)<br>v. 解救                        | The passengers were <b>rescued</b> from the sinking ship.                                                           | 乘客们从快沉的船上被救起。                      |
| <b>rival</b> ('raɪvəl)<br>n. 对手                          | The two boys were <b>rivals</b> for the first prize.                                                                | 这两个男孩是争头奖的对手。                      |
| <b>saucy</b> ('sɔ:si)<br>adj. 1. 无礼的<br>2. 俊俏的           | The girl was <b>saucy</b> to her mother.<br><br>The girl was wearing a <b>saucy</b> new hat.                        | 那女孩对她的母亲没有礼貌。<br><br>那女孩戴了顶俊俏的新帽子。 |
| <b>seize</b> (si:z)<br>v. 1. 抓住<br>2. 扣押<br>④ confiscate | Mother <b>seized</b> the child by the arm.<br><br>The weapons hidden in the house were <b>seized</b> by the police. | 母亲抓住孩子的手臂。<br><br>藏在屋中的武器被警方扣押。    |

**Exercise 24.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Brick walls are more \_\_\_\_\_ than wooden fences.
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ country has many people per square mile.
3. The flow of water in a river is explained by the \_\_\_\_\_ of gravity.
4. We should try to \_\_\_\_\_ criminals rather than punish them.
5. The fireman tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the child from the burning house.

【解答】 1. permanent 2. populous 3. principle 4. reform 5. rescue

《第五部分》

|                                                     |                                                                                                              |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>shut</b> [ʃʌt]<br>v. 关上<br>同 close 同 open        | <b>Shut</b> the gate so that the dog can't get out.                                                          | 关上门, 以免狗出去。                           |
| <b>soak</b> [sauk]<br>v. 1. 浸湿<br>2. 吸收<br>同 absorb | She <b>soaked</b> the clothes before washing them.<br><br>Use this cloth to <b>soak</b> up the spilled milk. | 她在洗涤前, 先将衣服浸在水里。<br><br>用这块布将泼出的牛奶吸干。 |
| <b>spirit</b> ['spirit]<br>n. 精神                    | Though he is dead, he is with us in <b>spirit</b> .                                                          | 虽然他已死, 可是他的精神与我们同在。                   |
| <b>stepmother</b><br>['step,mʌðə]<br>n. 继母          | Mary didn't get along with her <b>stepmother</b> .                                                           | 玛丽和她的继母处得不好。                          |
| <b>stupid</b> ['si:ju:pid]<br>adj. 愚蠢的              | It was <b>stupid</b> of you to run away from the accident.                                                   | 你从意外事故中逃跑, 真不聪明。                      |
| <b>swell</b> [swel]<br>v. 膨胀<br>同 expand            | Wood often <b>swells</b> when it is wet.                                                                     | 木头浸湿时常会膨胀。                            |
| <b>theme</b> [θi:m]<br>n. 题目<br>同 topic, subject    | The <b>theme</b> of his talk was the need of education.                                                      | 他讲演的题目是“教育的需要”。                       |
| <b>tough</b> [tʌf]<br>adj. 强壮的                      | Only <b>tough</b> breeds of sheep can live in the mountains.                                                 | 只有强壮品种的羊才能住在山中。                       |
| <b>twist</b> [twist]<br>v. 缠绕                       | She <b>twisted</b> her hair round her fingers to make it curl.                                               | 她将头发缠绕在手指上, 使之卷曲。                     |

|                                        |                                                                                     |                         |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>violence</b> ['vaɪələns]<br>n. 暴力   | The policeman had to use <b>violence</b> to arrest the murderer.                    | 警察不得不使用暴力来逮捕凶手。         |
| <b>whirl</b> [hwɜ:l]<br>n. 旋转<br>v. 回旋 | The dancer suddenly made a <b>whirl</b> .<br>The leaves <b>whirled</b> in the wind. | 舞蹈演员突然转了一圈。<br>树叶在风中回旋。 |

**Exercise 24.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ his eyes and tried to sleep.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ is willing but the flesh is weak.
3. John's real mother died last year, and now he lives with his \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Her ankle \_\_\_\_\_ up after she fell down.
5. Patriotism was his \_\_\_\_\_ when he spoke at our school.

**【解答】** 1. shut 2. spirit 3. stepmother 4. swelled 5. theme

### 成果测验

**Exercise 24.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

1. (A)enduring (B)permanent (C)instant (D)perpetual
2. (A)chase (B)pursue (C)seek (D)seize
3. (A)acquire (B)obtain (C)save (D)gain
4. (A)theory (B)theme (C)topic (D)subject
5. (A)silly (B)efficient (C)stupid (D)foolish
6. (A)unclothed (B)passionate (C)bare (D)naked
7. (A)scheme (B)vocation (C)career (D)occupation
8. (A)entitle (B)name (C)designate (D)reside

- \_\_\_ 9. (A)miserable (B)populous (C)wretched (D)pitiable  
 \_\_\_ 10. (A)resolve (B)decline (C)reject (D)refuse

**【解答】** 1. C 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. A

**Exercise 24.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. 有效率的  
 (A)magic (B)efficient (C)clever (D)instant  
 \_\_\_ 2. 实验  
 (A)instrument (B)expedition (C)project (D)experiment  
 \_\_\_ 3. 杰作  
 (A)expert (B)master (C)masterpiece (D)feast  
 \_\_\_ 4. 原则  
 (A)principle (B)principal (C)subject (D)theme  
 \_\_\_ 5. 才能  
 (A)emphasis (B)instinct (C)emotion (D)passion

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 24.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_ 1. *latter*  
 (A)former (B)better (C)lower (D)slower  
 \_\_\_ 2. *temporary*  
 (A)lonesome (B)cold (C)immediate (D)permanent  
 \_\_\_ 3. *reveal*  
 (A)disclose (B)conceal (C)obtain (D)improve  
 \_\_\_ 4. *flesh*

(A)rotten (B)bone (C)soul (D)stupid

5. lose

(A)obtain (B)perish (C)tight (D)unite

**【解答】** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A

**Exercise 24.9** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词,每一格代表一个字母:

1. The stream forms a b                    y between your land and mine. (界线)
2. Who is your f                    e Chinese folk singer? (最喜爱的)
3. Have you been in c                    t with your sister recently? (接触)
4. The fathers of our country were p                    e believers in freedom.  
(热烈的)
5. I have to d                    e your invitation because my mother expects me at  
home. (拒绝)

**【解答】** 1. boundary 2. favorite 3. contact 4. passionate  
5. decline

**Exercise 24.10** 选出最适合句意的一个单词:

1. The poet has \_\_\_\_\_ fame all his life, but has never experienced it.  
(A)concealed (B)declined (C)acquired (D)pursued
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ my hand and said how glad he was to see me.  
(A)seized (B)twisted (C)pursued (D)required
3. The boy's eyes were \_\_\_\_\_ with tears.  
(A)choked (B)drained (C)swollen (D)swept
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ a good knowledge of English by studying hard.

(A)disturbed (B)acquired (C)revealed (D)demanded

5. He \_\_\_\_\_ the block of wood in two with a single blow.

(A)twisted (B)snatched (C)chopped (D)crept

6. It is interesting to read the \_\_\_\_\_ of great men.

(A)beads (B)boundaries (C)purples (D)careers

7. What is your \_\_\_\_\_ food?

(A)passionate (B)favorite (C)populous (D)effective

8. The burglar \_\_\_\_\_ into the house and up the stairs.

(A)rescued (B)whirled (C)crept (D)declined

9. Birds do not learn to build their nests but build them by \_\_\_\_\_.

(A)instinct (B)passion (C)principle (D)theory

10. They started their holiday on a \_\_\_\_\_ day; it was cold and the rain never stopped.

(A)stupid (B)saucy (C)wilful (D)miserable

**【解答】** 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. D



## Vocabulary Fundamental

### A

abroad 1  
absolute 12  
academic 24  
✓accentuate 36  
accept 48  
accidental 59  
accompany 71  
accomplish 82  
accord 94  
account 106  
accustom 117  
ache 128  
achieve 140  
✓acid 257  
acquire 269  
actual 151  
additional 163  
admire 175  
admit 187  
✓advance 298  
advantage 210  
adventure 222  
✓advertise 234  
affair 245  
affect 1  
agency 12  
ahead 24  
aim 36  
alarm 48  
ambition 59  
amuse 71  
anchor 82  
angle 106  
ankle 117  
✓apparent 128  
appreciate 140  
approach 257  
apron 269  
ash 151  
✓aspect 163  
✓awwemble 175  
assist 187  
assure 198

atmosphere 210

attach 222  
attack 234  
attempt 245  
✓attend 1  
attitude 12  
✓attraction 24  
audience 36  
author 48  
authority 59  
avoid 72  
awaken 82  
award 94  
aware 106

### B

bachelor 117  
✓barn 128  
basis 140  
battle 257  
✓bead 269  
✓heard 163  
beast 175  
beat 151  
behave 187  
biology 199  
✓bitter 222  
blacksmith 234  
blade 245  
✓blame 2  
blank 12  
✓blaze 25  
✓bless 37  
blind 49  
✓blossom 60  
✓blush 83  
boast 94  
bold 106  
✓bomb 72  
border 118  
✓bore 129  
bother 141  
bough 257  
boundary 270  
bowl 151

✓brass 163  
bravery 175  
brilliant 199  
broad 211  
✓bust 222  
✓brook 234  
✓broom 246  
bubble 2 bulk 13  
✓bundle 37  
burden 49  
✓bureau 60  
✓burial 72  
✓bush 83  
✓butcher 94

### C

cabin 107  
calm 118  
✓canal 129  
candle 141  
capable 258  
career 270  
✓carpenter 152  
✓carve 164  
✓castle 176  
cattle 187  
cause 199  
✓cautious 211  
✓cease 223  
ceiling 235  
cell 246  
✓cemetery 2  
ceremony 13  
challenge 25  
characteristic 37  
charitable 37  
charitable 49  
charm 60  
✓chase 72  
cheat 83  
cheek 95  
cheer 107  
✓chew 118  
✓chilly 129  
choice 141

✓choke 258  
✓chop 270  
✓circumstance 152  
✓civil 164  
claim 176  
✓clay 188  
colony 199  
color—blind 211  
✓combine 223  
comfort 235  
command 246  
✓commendation 2  
✓commerce 13  
✓commit 25  
✓communicate 37  
companion 49  
✓comparison 60  
compel 72  
compete 83  
✓competent 95  
complain 107  
complex 118  
compose 129  
✓compound 141  
✓comrade 258  
✓conceal 270  
✓conceive 152  
concern 154  
conclude 176  
✓condemn 188  
conduct 199  
✓conference 211  
confess 223  
✓confine 235  
✓confirm 246  
conflict 2  
confuse 13  
✓congress 25  
connect 37  
✓conquer 49  
✓conscience 60  
✓consent 72  
✓consequence 83  
✓consist 95

- consolation 107  
consolidate 118  
constant 129  
constitute 141  
consult 258  
contact 270  
contain 152  
contest 164  
contract 176  
contrary 188  
contrast 199  
contribute 211  
converse 223  
convert 235  
convince 246  
cooperate 2  
copper 13  
correction 25  
correspond 37  
costume 49  
cottage 60  
counterpart 72  
courage 83  
crack 95  
crash 107  
crawl 118  
create 129  
credit 258  
creep 270  
crime 152  
critical 164  
crop 176  
crude 188  
cruel 199  
crush 211  
cultivate 223  
cunning 235  
cure 246  
curious 2  
curse 13  
**D**  
damp 25  
darken 37  
dash 49  
dawn 60  
deafen 72  
debate 83  
debt 95  
decay 107  
decent 118  
decisive 129  
deck 141  
declare 258  
decline 270  
decorate 152  
decrease 164  
deed 176  
defeat 188  
defect 199  
defend 211  
delay 223  
delegate 235  
delicate 246  
delicious 3  
delight 14  
demand 25  
deny 38  
deposit 50  
depress 61  
derive 73  
descend 84  
describe 95  
deserve 108  
despair 119  
desperate 130  
despose 141  
destroy 259  
detail 271  
determine 153  
device 165  
devote 177  
differ 188  
differentiate 200  
digest 211  
dignity 224  
dim 236  
dip 247  
direct 3  
disappear 14  
disappoint 26  
discharge 38  
disclose 50  
discourage 61  
display 73  
dispose 84  
dispute 96  
distinction 108  
distress 119  
distribute 142  
district 130  
disturb 259  
ditch 271  
divide 153  
divine 165  
divorce 177  
doll 189  
domestic 200  
dot 212  
doubt 224  
drag 236  
drain 247  
draw 3  
drift 14  
drown 26  
dull 38  
drum 50  
dusk 61  
dust 73  
**E**  
earnest 84  
ease 96  
echo 108  
edge 119  
edible 130  
educate 142  
effective 259  
efficient 271  
elbow 153  
election 165  
elegant 177  
elementary 189  
embrace 200  
emergency 212  
emotion 224  
emperor 236  
emphasis 247  
empire 3  
employ 14  
encourage 26  
endeavor 38  
endure 50  
energetic 73  
enforce 84  
engage 96  
enormous 108  
enterprise 119  
entertain 130  
enthusiastic 142  
entre 259  
entire 271  
entrance 153  
envy 165  
equator 177  
equip 189  
error 200  
escape 212  
establish 224  
estate 236  
estimate 247  
event 3  
evidence 14  
evident 26  
excellence 38  
exception 50  
exchange 61  
exclaim 236  
excuse 224  
executive 212  
exhaust 200  
exhibit 189  
exist 177  
expedition 165  
expense 153  
experiment 271  
expert 259  
explode 142  
explore 130  
export 119  
expose 108  
express 96  
extend 84  
extent 73  
extraordinary 61  
extreme 50

**F**

fable 26  
 faculty 14  
 fade 39  
 failure 3  
 faint 61  
 fairy 73  
 faithful 84  
 fancy 96  
 farewell 108  
 fasten 119  
 fate 130  
 fault 142  
 favor 259  
 favorite 271  
 feast 153  
 feature 166  
 federal 177  
 feed 189  
 festival 200  
 fetch 212  
 fiber 224  
 fierce 236  
 figure 247  
 file 3  
 financial 14  
 firm 26  
 fist 39  
 flame 50  
 flash 62  
 flatter 73  
 favor 84  
 flee 96  
 fleet 108  
 flesh 119  
 float 130  
 flood 142  
 flutter 259  
 foam 271  
 fog 153  
 folly 166  
 forbid 177  
 force 189  
 formation 201  
 fort 212  
 forthright 224

fortunate 236  
 foul 247  
 fraud 3  
 freight 14  
 frequent 26  
 frighten 39  
 frost 62  
 frown 73  
 frustrate 84  
 fulfil(1) 96  
 function, 108  
 fund 119  
 fundamental 130  
 funeral 142  
 fur 259  
 furnace 271  
 furnish 153  
 fury 166

**G**

gallery 177  
 gallop 189  
 garment 201  
 gasp 215  
 gay 224  
 gaze 236  
 gem 247  
 generate 4  
 generous 14  
 genius 25  
 ghost 39  
 glance 50  
 gleam 62  
 glimpse 74  
 glorious 85  
 grace 96  
 gradual 108  
 graduate 120  
 grand 130  
 grant 142  
 grateful 259  
 grave 271  
 greedy 153  
 grief 166  
 grind 177  
 grip 189  
 groan 201

grocery 213  
 guarantee 224

**H**

habit 236  
 hail 247  
 halt 4  
 handy 14  
 harbor 27  
 hardship 39  
 hardware 51  
 harness 62  
 harvest 74  
 haste 85  
 haunt 96  
 hay 108  
 heal 120  
 healthy 131  
 heap 142  
 hell 259  
 herd 271  
 hesitate 153  
 hide 166  
 hind 189  
 hire 201  
 hollow 213  
 holy 225  
 hop 236  
 horizon 247  
 horn 4  
 horrible 15  
 howl 27  
 huge 39  
 humble 51  
 hymn 62

**I**

identify 85  
 ignorant 109  
 illustrate 120  
 imagine 131  
 immediate 142  
 immense 260  
 import 272  
 impossible 154  
 impression 167  
 improve 178  
 impulse 190

incidental 202  
 inclination 213  
 income 225  
 independence 237  
 indicate 248  
 individual 4  
 industrious 27  
 inferior 39  
 influence 51  
 inform 63  
 inhabit 71  
 injure 85  
 innocent 97  
 inquire 109  
 insist 120  
 inspire 131  
 instance 143  
 instant 260  
 instinct 272  
 institution 154  
 instruct 167  
 instrument 178  
 insult 190  
 intelligent 202  
 intend 214  
 interest 225  
 international 237  
 interrupt 248  
 interval 4  
 intimate 15  
 introduce 27  
 invent 40  
 investigate 51  
 invite 63  
 involve 74  
 irregular 85  
 issue 97  
 item 109

**J**

jar 120  
 jealous 131  
 jewel 143  
 join 260  
 joint 272  
 journal 154  
 journey 167

junior 178  
jury 190  
justice 202

## K

keen 214  
kindle 225  
kite 237  
kneel 248  
knot 4  
knowledge 15

## L

labor 27  
lack 51  
ladder 63  
lamb 74  
lame 85  
landlord 97  
landscape 109  
lane 120  
lantern 131  
lap 143  
lash 260  
latter 272  
launch 154  
lawn 167  
leak 178  
lean 190  
leap 202  
leather 214  
legal 225  
leisure 237  
lessen 248  
liberal 5  
liberty 15  
lid 28  
lighten 40  
lightning 52  
limb 63  
liquid 74  
liquor 86  
literature 97  
lover 109  
loan 120  
local 131  
locate 143  
lodge 260

lonesome 272  
loss 154  
lovely 167  
lower 178  
loyal 190  
luck 202  
lumber 214  
lung 225

## M

machinery 237  
magic 248  
magnificent 5  
majesty 15  
majority 28  
male 40  
mammal 52  
manage 63  
manly 86  
manufacture 97  
manuscript 109  
maple 121  
marble 132  
marvel 143  
mast 260  
masterpiece 272  
match 154  
material 167  
mayor 179  
meantime 191  
measure 202  
mechanic 214  
medium 226  
melt 237  
mend 248  
mental 5  
mention 16  
mercy 28  
merit 40  
method 63  
mighty 75  
mild 86  
military 98  
millionaire 110  
mingle 121  
minor 132  
minute 143

mirror 260  
miserable 273  
mixfortune 155  
mislead 169  
mistrust 179  
mixture 119  
mock 202  
mode 214  
moderate 226  
modest 237  
moist 248  
momentary 5  
monument 16  
moral 28  
mortal 40  
motion 52  
motive 63  
mount 75  
mourn 86  
multiply 98  
murder 110  
muscle 121  
mutual 132  
mysterious 143

## N

nail 260  
naked 273  
native 155  
navy 167  
neat 179  
needle 191  
negative 202  
neglect 214  
nervous 237  
neighborhood 226  
nest 249  
neutral 15  
nickname 16  
nod 28  
normal 52  
nostril 63  
notify 75  
notion 86  
numerous 98  
**O**  
obey 110

object 121  
objective 132  
oblige 141  
observe 261  
obtain 273  
obvious 155  
occasion 167  
occupy 179  
occur 191  
odd 202  
odor 226  
offend 214  
offer 238  
official 249  
omit 5  
onion 16  
operate 28  
opportunity 40  
oppose 52  
oral 63  
orbit 75  
order 86  
ordinary 98  
organization 110  
origin 121  
ornament 132  
outbreak 144  
outlook 261  
output 273  
outstanding 155  
overall 179  
overcome 168  
overlook 191  
owe 202  
owl 214

## P

pace 226  
pack 238  
package 249  
painful 28  
palace 40  
palm 52  
pang 64  
paradise 75  
paragraph 86  
piston 98

parliament 110  
 parlor 121  
 partial 133  
 participate 114  
 passage 261  
 passionate 273  
 pasture 155  
 pat 168  
 parch 179  
 path 191  
 patience 203  
 pause 214  
 pave 226  
 paw 238  
 payroll 249  
 peacock 6  
 peak 16  
 pearl 29  
 peasant 40  
 peck 52  
 peculiar 61  
 peer 75  
 penalty 87  
 peninsula 98  
 pepper 110  
 perceive 122  
 perform 133  
 perilous 144  
 perish 262  
 permanent 273  
 personality 155  
 persuade 168  
 phrase 180  
 physical 191  
 physician 203  
 pickpocket 226  
 picturesque 238  
 pigeon 238  
 pile 249  
 pioneer 6  
 pit 16  
 pitch 29  
 pity 41  
 planet 53  
 plate 64  
 pledge 76

pluck 87  
 plunge 99  
 poetry 111  
 poisonous 122  
 polish 133  
 polite 144  
 politician 262  
 populous 274  
 port 156  
 portable 168  
 portion 180  
 positive 191  
 possess 203  
 pot 215  
 pour 227  
 poverty 238  
 practical 250  
 pray 6  
 preach 17  
 precious 29  
 preface 41  
 preparation 53  
 preserve 64  
 pressure 76  
 pretend 87  
 prevent 99  
 preview 111  
 previous 122  
 priceless 133  
 priest 144  
 primary 262  
 principle 274  
 privilege 156  
 procedure 168  
 procession 180  
 proclaim 192  
 profession 203  
 profit 215  
 progress 227  
 project 238  
 prompt 250  
 pronounce 6  
 proof 17  
 property 29  
 proportion 41  
 proposal 53

prospect 64  
 prosper 76  
 protect 87  
 protest 99  
 provide 111  
 province 122  
 publish 133  
 purchase 144  
 purple 262  
 pursue 274  
 puzzle 156

## Q

quality 168  
 quarrel 180  
 queer 192  
 quit 203  
 quiver 215  
 quote 227

## R

race 6  
 rag 17  
 rage 29  
 range 41  
 rapid 53  
 rare 65  
 raw 76  
 realize 87  
 rear 99  
 reckless 111  
 recognize 133  
 recommend 122  
 reduce 239  
 refer 250  
 reference 145  
 reflect 262  
 reform 274  
 region 156  
 register 168  
 regret 180  
 reign 192  
 reject 203  
 rejoice 215  
 relate 227  
 relative 6  
 release 17  
 relieve 29

religious 41  
 remarkable 53  
 remedy 65  
 remind 76  
 remove 87  
 rent 99  
 repair 111  
 repeat 133  
 replace 122  
 reply 239  
 represent 250  
 request 145  
 require 262  
 rescue 274  
 resemble 156  
 resent 169  
 reserve 180  
 reside 192  
 resign 203  
 resist 215  
 resolve 227  
 resort 6  
 responsibility 17  
 restless 29  
 resume 41  
 retain 53  
 retire 65  
 retreat 76  
 reveal 87  
 revenge 99  
 reward 133  
 ridiculous 122  
 rifle 239  
 righteous 250  
 ripe 145  
 risk 262  
 rival 274  
 roast 156  
 rod 169  
 role 180  
 rooster 192  
 rotten 204  
 rough 216  
 royal 227  
 rub 7  
 rude 17

rug 29  
ruin 41  
rust 53  
**S**  
sacred 76  
sacrifice 87  
saddle 99  
saint 111  
sake 133  
salary 239  
sandwich 250  
satisfy 145  
sauce 262  
saucy 274  
savage 156  
scarcity 169  
scare 180  
scarf 192  
scatter 204  
scent 215  
scheme 227  
scorn 17  
scout 29  
scrape 42  
scratch 53  
scream 65  
screen 76  
screw 87  
seal 99  
search 111  
secret 133  
section 239  
secure 250  
security 145  
seek 262  
seize 274  
sentiment 156  
series 169  
serious 180  
servant 192  
severe 204  
sew 215  
shadow 7  
shallow 17  
shame 30  
sharp 42

shave 53  
shed 65  
shelf 76  
shell 88  
shelter 99  
sheriff 111  
shield 134  
shift 122  
shoot 239  
shortage 250  
shortcoming 145  
shriek 263  
shut 275  
silence 157  
silly 169  
silverware 180  
similarity 192  
sin 204  
sind 215  
situate 227  
situation 7  
sketch 30  
skill 42  
slant 53  
slavery 66  
sleeve 77  
slender 88  
slice 100  
slight 134  
slip 122  
slope 240  
smart 250  
smash 146  
snatch 263  
soak 275  
sob 157  
social 169  
sole 181  
solmn 193  
solid 204  
solution 216  
somewhat 228  
sore 7  
soul 18  
sound 30  
sour 42

sow 54  
spacious 66  
spare 77  
sparkle 88  
spear 110  
specialist 112  
spell 134  
sphere 123  
spider 240  
spill 251  
spin 146  
spine 263  
spirit 275  
spit 157  
splendid 170  
split 181  
spoil 193  
spokesman 204  
spot 216  
spray 228  
spread 7  
sprinkle 18  
spy 30  
square 42  
squirrel 54  
stability 77  
staff 66  
stain 88  
stake 100  
stalk 112  
stare 134  
startle 123  
starve 240  
statesman 251  
steady 146  
steer 170  
steep 157  
stem 263  
stepmother 275  
stern 181  
stuff 193  
still 205  
sting 216  
stir 228  
stomach 7  
stoop 18

storage 30  
stout 42  
stram 54  
straw 66  
strawberry 77  
stream 88  
stretch 100  
strict 112  
string 135  
stroke 123  
structure 240  
struggle 251  
stuff 146  
stumble 263  
stupid 275  
substantial 157  
substitute 170  
subtract 181  
subway 193  
suck 205  
suffer 216  
suitable 228  
suitcase 8  
sum 18  
summon 31  
superintendent 42  
supreme 54  
surface 66  
surgeon 77  
surrender 88  
surround 101  
survey 112  
suspect 135  
suspicion 123  
swallow 240  
sway 251  
sweat 146  
sweep 263  
swell 275  
swift 157  
swing 170  
sword 181  
syllable 193  
symbolize 205  
sympathy 216

**T**

- |                 |                 |                |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| tale 228        | tissue 135      | university 194 | waterproof 78  |
| talent 8        | toad 123        | up-to-date 217 | weaken 101     |
| talkative 18    | toil 252        | urge 228       | wealthy 113    |
| tame 31         | torch 146       | usage 8        | weapon 89      |
| tangle 43       | torture 263     | utter 18       | weary 135      |
| tap 54          | tough 275       | <b>V</b>       | web 124        |
| task 77         | tower 157       | vaccinate 31   | weed 241       |
| tasty 89        | trace 170       | vanish 43      | weep 252       |
| tavern 101      | trademark 193   | vapor 55       | welfare 147    |
| temper 112      | tradition 182   | variety 66     | whip 264       |
| temperature 135 | traffic 205     | vast 78        | whirl 276      |
| temple 123      | tragic 217      | vein 101       | whisper 158    |
| tender 240      | tramp 228       | venture 112    | whistle 174    |
| term 251        | transfer 8      | verse 135      | widow 182      |
| terrible 146    | transport 18    | vessel 124     | wilderness 194 |
| territory 263   | trap 31         | vest 241       | wil(1)ful 218  |
| theme 275       | treaty 43       | vice 252       | wipe 205       |
| thermometer 157 | tremble 55      | victim 147     | witch 229      |
| thirst 170      | tremendous 66   | vine 264       | withdraw 8     |
| thorough 181    | trial 78        | violence 276   | wither 19      |
| thead 193       | tribe 89        | virgin 158     | witness 31     |
| threat 205      | trick 101       | visible 171    | witty 43       |
| thrill 217      | trim 112        | vision 182     | woe 55         |
| throat 228      | troop 135       | vocabulary 194 | worm 66        |
| throne 8        | troublesome 123 | volcano 205    | worsen 78      |
| throughout 18   | trust 240       | volume 217     | wreck 89       |
| thrust 31       | tune 252        | vow 228        | wring 101      |
| thumb 43        | turtle 146      | vowel 8        | wrist 113      |
| thunder 54      | twin 264        | voyage 18      | <b>Y</b>       |
| tick 66         | twist 275       | <b>W</b>       | yell 124       |
| tide 77         | typical 157     | wage 31        | yield 241      |
| tight 89        | <b>U</b>        | warfare 43     | <b>Z</b>       |
| timber 101      | union 171       | warrior 55     | zone 252       |
| tin 112         | unite 182       | waterfall 66   |                |